

FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT



Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

A Texas limited liability company

3432 County Road 101
2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104

Miami, Florida 33137

(612) 418-9900

ptaunton@nauticalbowls.com

Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345

(320) 434-5290

bryant@nauticalbowls.com

nauticalbowls.com

You will operate a fast casual restaurant featuring superfood smoothie bowls and healthy beverages under the name “NAUTICAL BOWLS.”

The total investment necessary to begin operation of a NAUTICAL BOWLS ~~franchised business~~ ~~Restaurant is~~ from ~~\$222,250,750~~ to ~~\$474,750~~409,350. This includes \$39,500 that must be paid to the franchisor or an affiliate. At your option, but subject to the franchisor’s approval, you may acquire the rights to open three NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised businesses, under the Three Pack program, for an initial franchise fee of \$99,500. If you acquire the rights to open three NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised businesses under the Three Pack program, the total investment necessary to begin operation of each NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised business (assuming that all three are developed at the same time) ranges from \$215,917 to \$403,017.

This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of your franchise agreement and other information in plain English. Read this disclosure document and all accompanying agreements carefully. You must receive this disclosure document at least 14 calendar days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate concerning the proposed franchise sale. **Note, however, that no governmental agency has verified the information contained in this document.**

You may wish to receive your disclosure document in another format that is more convenient for you. To discuss the availability of disclosures in different formats, contact Bryant Amundson at 3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345, bryant@nauticalbowls.com or (320) 434-5290 Peter Taunton at 2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida 33137, ptaunton@nauticalbowls.com or (612) 418-9900.

The terms of your contract will govern your franchise relationship. Do not rely on the disclosure document alone to understand your contract. Read your entire contract carefully. Show your contract and this disclosure document to an advisor, like a lawyer or an accountant.

Buying a franchise is a complex investment. The information in this disclosure document can help you make up your mind. More information on franchising, such as, “A Consumer’s Guide to Buying a Franchise,” which can help you understand how to use this disclosure document, is available from the Federal Trade Commission. You can contact the FTC at 1-877-FTC-HELP or by writing to the FTC at 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, D.C. 20580. You can also visit the FTC’s home page at www.ftc.gov for additional information. Call your state agency or visit your public library for other sources of information on franchising.

There may also be laws on franchising in your state. Ask your state agencies about them.

Date of Issuance: March 22, 20232024

How to Use This Franchise Disclosure Document

Here are some questions you may be asking about buying a franchise and tips on how to find more information:

QUESTION	WHERE TO FIND INFORMATION
How much can I earn?	Item 19 may give you information about an outlet sales, costs, profits or losses. You should also try to obtain this information from others, like current and former franchisees. You can find their names and contact information in Item 20 or Exhibit C.
How much will I need to invest?	Items 5 and 6 list fees you will be paying to the franchisor or at the franchisor’s direction. Item 7 lists the initial investment to open. Item 8 describes the suppliers you must use.
Does the franchisor have the financial ability to provide support to my business?	Item 21 or Exhibit A includes financial statements. Review these statements carefully.
Is the franchise system stable, growing, or shrinking?	Item 20 summarizes the recent history of the number of company-owned and franchised outlets.
Will my business be the only NAUTICAL BOWLS business in my area?	Item 12 and the “territory” provisions in the franchise agreement describe whether the franchisor and other franchisees can compete with you.
Does the franchisor have a troubled legal history?	Items 3 and 4 tell you whether the franchisor or its management have been involved in material litigation or bankruptcy proceedings.
What’s it like to be a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchisee?	Item 20 or Exhibit C list current and former franchisees. You can contact them to ask about their experiences.
What else should I know?	These questions are only a few things you should look for. Review all 23 Items and all Exhibits in this disclosure document to better understand this franchise opportunity. See the table of contents.

What You Need To Know About Franchising *Generally*

Continuing responsibility to pay fees. You may have to pay royalties and other fees even if you are losing money.

Business model can change. The franchise agreement may allow the franchisor to change its manuals and business model without your consent. These changes may require you to make additional investments in your franchise business or may harm your franchise business.

Supplier restrictions. You may have to buy or lease items from the franchisor or a limited group of suppliers the franchisor designates. These items may be more expensive than similar items you could buy on your own.

Operating restrictions. The franchise agreement may prohibit you from operating a similar business during the term of the franchise. There are usually other restrictions. Some examples may include controlling your location, your access to customers, what you sell, how you market, and your hours of operation.

Competition from franchisor. Even if the franchise agreement grants you a territory, the franchisor may have the right to compete with you in your territory.

Renewal. Your franchise agreement may not permit you to renew. Even if it does, you may have to sign a new agreement with different terms and conditions in order to continue to operate your franchise business.

When your franchise ends. The franchise agreement may prohibit you from operating a similar business after your franchise ends even if you still have obligations to your landlord or other creditors.

Some States Require Registration

Your state may have a franchise law, or other law, that requires franchisors to register before offering or selling franchises in the state. Registration does not mean that the state recommends the franchise or has verified the information in this document. To find out if your state has a registration requirement, or to contact your state, use the agency information in Exhibit F.

Your state also may have laws that require special disclosures or amendments be made to your franchise agreement. If so, you should check the State Specific Addenda. See the Table of Contents for the location of the State Specific Addenda.

Special Risks to Consider About *This Franchise*

Certain states require that the following risk(s) be highlighted:

1. **Out-of-State Dispute Resolution.** The franchise agreement requires you to resolve disputes with the franchisor by mediation, arbitration and/or litigation only in Minnesota. Out-of-state mediation, arbitration, or litigation may force you to accept a less favorable settlement for disputes. It may also cost more to mediate, arbitrate, or litigate with the franchisor in Minnesota than in your own state.
2. **Short Operating History.** The franchisor is at an early stage of development and has a limited operating history. This franchise is likely to be a riskier investment than a franchise in a system with a longer operating history.
3. **Financial Condition.** The franchisor's financial condition, as reflected in its financial statements (see Item 21), calls into question the franchisor's financial ability to provide services and support to you.

Certain states may require other risks to be highlighted. Check the "State Specific Addenda" (if any) to see whether your state requires other risks to be highlighted.

**ADDITIONAL DISCLOSURES REQUIRED
BY THE STATE OF MICHIGAN**

THE STATE OF MICHIGAN PROHIBITS CERTAIN UNFAIR PROVISIONS THAT ARE SOMETIMES IN FRANCHISE DOCUMENTS. IF ANY OF THE FOLLOWING PROVISIONS ARE IN THESE FRANCHISE DOCUMENTS, THE PROVISIONS ARE VOID AND CANNOT BE ENFORCED AGAINST YOU.

Each of the following provisions is void and unenforceable if contained in any documents relating to a franchise:

1. A prohibition of the right of a franchisee to join an association of franchisees.
2. A requirement that a franchisee assent to a release, assignment, novation, waiver, or estoppel which deprives a franchisee of rights and protections provided in the Michigan Franchise Investment Law. This shall not preclude a franchisee, after entering into a franchise agreement, from settling any and all claims.
3. A provision that permits a franchisor to terminate a franchise prior to the expiration of its term except for good cause. Good cause shall include the failure of the franchisee to comply with any lawful provision of the franchise agreement and to cure such failure after being given written notice thereof and a reasonable opportunity, which in no event need be more than 30 days, to cure such failure.
4. A provision that permits a franchisor to refuse to renew a franchise without fairly compensating the franchisee by repurchase or other means for the fair market value at the time of expiration of the franchisee's inventory, supplies, equipment, fixtures, and furnishings. Personalized materials which have no value to the franchisor and inventory, supplies, equipment, fixtures, and furnishings not reasonably required in the conduct of the franchise business are not subject to compensation. This subsection applies only if: (i) The term of the franchise is less than 5 years; and (ii) the franchisee is prohibited by the franchise or other agreement from continuing to conduct substantially the same business under another trademark, service mark, trade name, logotype, advertising, or other commercial symbol in the same area subsequent to the expiration of the franchise or the franchisee does not receive at least 6 months advance notice of franchisor's intent not to renew the franchise.
5. A provision that permits the franchisor to refuse to renew a franchise on terms generally available to other franchisees of the same class or type under similar circumstances. This section does not require a renewal provision.
6. A provision requiring that arbitration or litigation be conducted outside this state. This shall not preclude the franchisee from entering into an agreement, at the time of arbitration, to conduct arbitration at a location outside this state.
7. A provision which permits a franchisor to refuse to permit a transfer of ownership of a franchise, except for good cause. This subdivision does not prevent a franchisor from exercising a right of first refusal to purchase the franchise. Good cause shall include, but is not limited to:
 - a. The failure of the proposed transferee to meet the franchisor's then current reasonable qualifications or standards.
 - b. The fact that the proposed transferee is a competitor of the franchisor or subfranchisor.
 - c. The unwillingness of the proposed transferee to agree in writing to comply with all lawful obligations.
 - d. The failure of the franchisee or proposed transferee to pay any sums owing to the franchisor or to cure any default in the franchise agreement existing at the time of the proposed transfer.

8. A provision that requires the franchisee to resell to the franchisor items that are not uniquely identified with the franchisor. This subdivision does not prohibit a provision that grants to a franchisor a right of first refusal to purchase the assets of a franchisee on the same terms and conditions as a bona fide third party willing and able to purchase those assets, nor does this subdivision prohibit a provision that grants the franchisor the right to acquire the assets of a franchisee for the market or appraised value of such assets if the franchisee has breached the lawful provisions of the franchise agreement and has failed to cure the breach in the manner provided in subdivision (c).
9. A provision which permits the franchisor to directly or indirectly convey, assign, or otherwise transfer its obligations to fulfill contractual obligations to the franchisee unless provision has been made for providing the required contractual services.

THE FACT THAT THERE IS A NOTICE OF THIS OFFERING ON FILE WITH THE ATTORNEY GENERAL DOES NOT CONSTITUTE APPROVAL, RECOMMENDATION, OR ENDORSEMENT BY THE ATTORNEY GENERAL.

Any questions regarding this Notice shall be directed to the Attorney General's Office, Consumer Protection Division, G. Mennen Williams Building – 1st Floor, 525 West Ottawa Street, Lansing, Michigan 48913, (517) 373-7117.

THE MICHIGAN NOTICE APPLIES ONLY TO FRANCHISEES WHO ARE RESIDENTS OF MICHIGAN OR LOCATED THEIR FRANCHISES IN MICHIGAN.

**FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT
TABLE OF CONTENTS**

~~ITEM 1 THE FRANCHISOR AND ANY PARENTS, PREDECESSORS, AND AFFILIATES 1~~
~~ITEM 2 BUSINESS EXPERIENCE..... 2~~
~~ITEM 3 LITIGATION 2~~
~~ITEM 4 BANKRUPTCY 2~~
~~ITEM 5 INITIAL FEES 2~~
~~ITEM 6 OTHER FEES 3~~
~~ITEM 7 ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT 5~~
~~ITEM 8 RESTRICTIONS ON SOURCES OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES 10~~
~~ITEM 9 FRANCHISEE’S OBLIGATIONS 12~~
~~ITEM 10 FINANCING 14~~
~~ITEM 11 FRANCHISOR’S ASSISTANCE, ADVERTISING, COMPUTER SYSTEMS, AND TRAINING 14~~
~~ITEM 12 TERRITORY 18~~
~~ITEM 13 TRADEMARKS 19~~
~~ITEM 14 PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION 21~~
~~ITEM 15 OBLIGATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ACTUAL OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS 21~~
~~ITEM 16 RESTRICTIONS ON WHAT THE FRANCHISEE MAY SELL 22~~
~~ITEM 17 RENEWAL, TERMINATION, TRANSFER, AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION 22~~
~~ITEM 18 PUBLIC FIGURES 26~~
~~ITEM 19 FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE REPRESENTATIONS 26~~
~~ITEM 20 OUTLETS AND FRANCHISEE INFORMATION 26~~
~~ITEM 21 FINANCIAL STATEMENTS 32~~
~~ITEM 22 CONTRACTS 35~~
~~ITEM 23 RECEIPTS 35~~

ITEM 1 THE FRANCHISOR AND ANY PARENTS, PREDECESSORS, AND AFFILIATES 1
ITEM 2 BUSINESS EXPERIENCE..... 2
ITEM 3 LITIGATION 2
ITEM 4 BANKRUPTCY 3
ITEM 5 INITIAL FEES 3
ITEM 6 OTHER FEES 3
ITEM 7 ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT 6
ITEM 8 RESTRICTIONS ON SOURCES OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES 11
ITEM 9 FRANCHISEE’S OBLIGATIONS 13
ITEM 10 FINANCING 14
ITEM 11 FRANCHISOR’S ASSISTANCE, ADVERTISING, COMPUTER SYSTEMS, AND TRAINING 15
ITEM 12 TERRITORY 19
ITEM 13 TRADEMARKS 20

<u>ITEM 14 PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION</u>	<u>21</u>
<u>ITEM 15 OBLIGATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ACTUAL OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS</u>	<u>22</u>
<u>ITEM 16 RESTRICTIONS ON WHAT THE FRANCHISEE MAY SELL</u>	<u>22</u>
<u>ITEM 17 RENEWAL, TERMINATION, TRANSFER, AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION</u>	<u>23</u>
<u>ITEM 18 PUBLIC FIGURES</u>	<u>27</u>
<u>ITEM 19 FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE REPRESENTATIONS</u>	<u>27</u>
<u>ITEM 20 OUTLETS AND FRANCHISEE INFORMATION</u>	<u>27</u>
<u>ITEM 21 FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</u>	<u>32</u>
<u>ITEM 22 CONTRACTS</u>	<u>36</u>
<u>ITEM 23 RECEIPTS</u>	<u>37</u>

EXHIBITS:

Exhibit A	Financial Statements
Exhibit B	Franchise Agreement and Attachments
Exhibit C	List of Current Franchisees and List of Former Franchisees
Exhibit D	Table of Contents of Manual
Exhibit E	General Release (Sample Form Only)
Exhibit F	List of State Administrators
Exhibit G	Agents for Service of Process
Exhibit H	State Specific Riders to the Franchise Agreement
Exhibit I	State Effective Dates Page
Exhibit J	Receipts

ITEM 1
THE FRANCHISOR AND ANY PARENTS, PREDECESSORS, AND AFFILIATES

In this disclosure document, we use the term “we” and “us” to refer to Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC, the franchisor, and the term “you” to refer to the person buying the franchise, the franchisee. The franchisee may be an individual or a business entity, such as a corporation or a limited liability company. If the franchisee is a business entity, the term “you” refers only to the business – and not the owners of the business entity – unless otherwise noted.

The Franchisor and any Parents, Predecessors, and Affiliates

We are a Texas limited liability company, formed on September 25, 2020. We do business only under our corporate name and under the trade name and service mark “NAUTICAL BOWLS,” and maintain our principal business address at ~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka~~ 4640 Palmer Pointe Rd, Excelsior, Minnesota 5534555331. We have no predecessor or parent company. Our agent for service of process is identified in Exhibit G to this disclosure document.

We have been offering franchises of the type described in this disclosure document since October 2020, and have never offered franchises in any other line of business. We have never engaged in any business other than franchising the operation of the NAUTICAL BOWLS businesses.

We have never operated a business of the type being franchised, but our principals, Bryant Amundson and Rachel Amundson have operated a similar business since May 2018.

The Franchise Offered

We franchise the right to operate a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant using our proprietary business format and System and Marks, defined below. We call this the “Franchised Business.”

A NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant features superfood smoothie bowls and healthy beverages. They typically occupy ~~750450~~ to ~~1,200000~~ square feet of commercial space. They operate using our proprietary business format and operating system (our “System”), the distinguishing characteristics of which include distinctive Restaurant design, trade dress, fixtures and furnishings, our proprietary recipes and procedures for preparing, packaging, and serving menu items, operation and customer service standards and procedures, and other standards, specifications, techniques, and procedures that we development and implement, all of which we may change, improve, and further develop. They are identified by the name “NAUTICAL BOWLS” and other of our trademarks, including logos, slogans, and trade dress.

Competition

The market for the products and services you will offer is well-established and highly competitive. You will compete with other restaurants and cafés. There is active price competition among establishments, as well as competition for management personnel and for suitable commercial real estate sites. Competitors include locally-owned businesses and well as regional and national chain restaurants. Acai bowls are somewhat seasonal, with higher sales generally in warmer months.

Industry-Specific Regulation

The restaurant industry is heavily regulated. Many of the laws, rules, and regulations that apply to business generally, such as the federal and state anti-discrimination laws, federal wage and hour laws, and the Occupational Safety and Health Act also apply to restaurants.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, and state and local health departments administer and enforce laws and regulations that govern food preparation and service, and restaurant sanitation conditions. State and local agencies inspect Restaurants to ensure that they comply with these laws and regulations.

In addition, the Menu Labeling Provisions of the Patient Protection and Affordable Health Care Act require

certain Restaurants and retail food establishments to post caloric information on menus and menu boards and to make available to consumers additional written nutrition information upon request. State and local governments may have their own regulations.

The Federal Clean Air Act and various implementing state laws require certain state and local areas to meet national air quality standards limiting emissions of ozone, carbon monoxide, and particulate matters, including caps on omissions from commercial food preparation. Some areas have also adopted or are considering proposals that would regulate indoor air quality.

We strongly recommend that you investigate the laws in your jurisdiction before you purchase a franchise.

ITEM 2 BUSINESS EXPERIENCE

Peter Taunton – CEO

Peter Taunton founded Nautical Bowls and served as CEO since July 2021. Peter also founded the Snap Fitness concept and served as President/CEO, located in Chanhassen, Minnesota, from October 2003 through December 2018 and currently serves as non-executive Chairman of the Board for Lift Brands, Inc., located in Chanhassen, Minnesota, since December 2019. Peter served Chief Executive Officer of YogaFit Franchising, LLC, located in Chanhassen, Minnesota, from August 2013 through December 2018. Peter served on the Board of Managers of 9Round Franchising, LLC located in Greenville, South Carolina from February 2013 through December 2018 and on the board of directors of Farrell’s Extreme BodyShaping, Inc., located in Des Moines, Iowa from January 2016 through December 2018.

Bryant Amundson: Managing Member

Bryant Amundson co-founded the NAUTICAL BOWLS concept and has served as our manager since our inception on September 25, 2020. Bryant also has served as Vice President of NB LLC in St. Paul, Minnesota since October 2017. Bryant also has served as account executive of Dunord Reinsurance Consulting in Bloomington, Minnesota from April 2018 to April 2019.

Rachel Amundson: Managing Member

Rachel Amundson co-founded the NAUTICAL BOWLS concept and has served as our manager since our inception on September 25, 2020. Rachel also has served as chief executive officer of NB LLC in St. Paul, Minnesota since October 2017.

ITEM 3 LITIGATION

[NoKirin Hawley, et al v. Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC, Peter Taunton, Bryant Amundson, Rachel Amundson, et al Fourth Judicial District, State of Minnesota \(Case No. 27-CV-23-19306\). On December 22, 2023, a former franchisee sued us and our officers and other representatives of our company alleging violations of the Minnesota Franchise Law, the Minnesota Deceptive Trade Practices Act, the Texas Deceptive Trade Practices Act, claims of common law fraud and negligent misrepresentation in connection with the sale of her franchise, and promissory/equitable estoppel and breach of contract. Plaintiffs seek compensatory and exemplary damages and recovery of attorneys’ fees. This case is in the pre-trial stage and we intend to vigorously defend all claims.](#)

[Cheryl Hatfield, et al v. Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC, Peter Taunton, Bryant Amundson, Rachel Amundson, et al, Fourth Judicial District, State of Minnesota \(Case No. 27-CV-19329\). On December 22, 2023, a former franchisee sued us and our officers and other representatives of our company alleging violations of the Minnesota Franchise Law, the Minnesota Deceptive Trade Practices Act, the Texas Deceptive Trade Practices Act, claims of common law fraud and negligent misrepresentation in connection with the sale of her franchise, and promissory/equitable estoppel and breach of contract. Plaintiffs seek](#)

compensatory and exemplary damages and recovery of attorneys' fees. This case is in the pre-trial stage and we intend to vigorously defend all claims.

Bright Beacon, Inc. v. Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC, Peter Taunton, Bryant Amundson, Rachel Amundson, et al. Superior Court of the State of California, San Diego County (Court File No. 37-2023-00055847-CU-FR-CTL). On December 27, 2023, a former franchisee sued us and our officers and other representatives of our company alleging violations of the California Franchise Investment Law, fraud, negligent misrepresentation, breach of contract, violation of the Unfair Competition Law, and violation of the Texas Deceptive Trade Practices Act, in connection with the sale of the franchise. Plaintiff seeks compensatory and exemplary damages and recovery of attorneys' fees. This case is in the pre-trial stage and we intend to vigorously defend these claims.

Except for these three actions, no litigation is required to be disclosed in this Item.

ITEM 4 BANKRUPTCY

No bankruptcy is required to be disclosed in this Item.

ITEM 5 INITIAL FEES

When you sign the franchise agreement, you will pay a nonrefundable initial franchise fee of \$39,500, which is uniform for all new franchisees acquiring the right to operate a single Restaurant.

Alternatively, and with our approval, you may purchase franchise rights for three NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants ("Three Pack"), in which case, you will sign our "Three Pack Addendum" (see Attachment H to the Franchise Agreement) and pay us a nonrefundable initial franchise fee of \$99,500, which is uniform for all new franchisees acquiring the right to operate three Restaurants.

ITEM 6 OTHER FEES

Franchise Agreement

Type of Fee¹	Amount	Due Date	Remarks
Royalty Fee	6% of Gross Revenue ²	Weekly	
National Marketing Fund Contribution	2% of Gross Revenue	Weekly	
Local Advertising	2% of Gross Revenue	Monthly	This is not required, only recommended
Additional Training; Remedial Training	Cost of travel, hotel, and food only	As incurred	We currently do not charge a fee except that you must pay for related travel, lodging, and food expenses

Type of Fee ¹	Amount	Due Date	Remarks
Mandatory Ongoing Training and Seminars	Cost of your and your employees' travel, hotel, and food	As incurred	We currently do not charge a fee except that you must pay for your and your employees' expenses, such as travel, lodging, and food. We may require you to attend additional training, but no more than three times per year for a minimum of two days.
Administrative Fee	\$250 per enforcement effort (i.e., written or verbal notification and follow up), and \$250 per week for each week that the issue remains unresolved	On demand	We may assess an administrative fee to compensate us for our time.
Mystery shop program	Up to \$150 per month	On demand	Payable if we require you to participate in a mystery shop program.
Interest/Late Fee	18% per year or the maximum lawful rate, whichever is less	As invoiced	Payable only if any sums due to us are not paid promptly when due.
Transfer Fee – payable if franchisee is an individual transferring to a business entity	\$1,500	With transfer application	Payable if you sign the franchise agreement as an individual and you request to transfer to a corporation or other business entity that you control.
Transfer Fee – Non-controlling interest transfer	\$2,500	With transfer application	Payable if an Owner requests to transfer a non-controlling ownership interest in the franchisee business entity to another party.
Transfer Fee – controlling interest transfer to third party	None, but the new franchisee will pay us an initial franchise fee in the amount being charged to new franchisees	Upon transfer	The initial franchise fee is payable if you request to transfer the business or transfer control in the franchisee entity to another party.
Renewal Fee	\$2,500	Before renewal	

Type of Fee ¹	Amount	Due Date	Remarks
Inspection and Testing	\$1,000 or our actual testing or inspection costs, whichever is less, plus reimbursement of our related travel, lodging, and salary costs for the individual(s) performing the inspection or testing	As invoiced	Before approving a new supplier or vendor at your request, we may require you to pay the cost of testing the supplier's products and inspecting its facilities.
Indemnification	Amount of actual loss or liability	On demand	
Audit Fee	Cost of audit	On demand	Payable only if the audit was necessary because of your failure to report to us or if it shows that you have underreported Gross Revenues by 2% or more.
Technology Fee	Amount necessary to cover costs associated with your use of mobile apps, gift card processing fees, and other communication technologies and digital services. Currently, \$300 per month.	Monthly or another period that we specify	
Convention	Our then-current fee (currently, \$129 per franchise or attendee)	Annual	If you fail to attend the convention or other mandatory trainings, you must pay us a non-attendance fee, which is currently \$1,000. See Note 3.

Notes:

Note 1. All fees are imposed by us, are payable to us, and are non-refundable, unless otherwise noted. We do not impose or collect any other fees or payment for any third party.

Note 2. "Gross Revenue" is the total selling price of all services and products and all income of every other kind and nature related to your NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, whether for cash or credit and regardless of collection in the case of credit. "Gross Revenue" does not include sales (or similar) taxes that you collect from your customers if you transmit them to the appropriate taxing authority or tips or gratuities paid directly by Restaurant customers to your employees or paid to you and then turned over to these employees in lieu of direct tips or gratuities. "Gross Revenue" also does not include proceeds from the sale of gift cards (all proceeds from the sale of gift cards belong to us), but it does include the redemption value of gift cards at the time purchases are made.

Note 3. All franchisees are required to attend the annual convention. If you fail to attend the convention, or any other convention or workshop that we may schedule from time to time, but not more than once per

quarter, we reserve the right to charge you our then-current non-attendance fee (currently, \$1,000 per franchise).

ITEM 7
ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT
YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Initial Franchise Fee ¹	\$39,500	\$39,500	Lump sum	When you sign the Franchise Agreement	Us
Lease Security Deposit ²	\$3,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Rent ²	\$52,000	\$207,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Architect and Permitting Fees	\$10,000 <u>2,500</u>	\$20,000	As arranged	As required by architect and municipality	Architect, city and municipality
Water, sewer, and Municipality Impact Fees ³	\$0	\$2520,000	As arranged	As required by municipality	Municipality
Leasehold Improvements ⁴	\$130103,000	\$230203,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Contractor(s)
Signage ⁵	\$26,000	\$2014,000	As arranged	As required by sign vendor	Suppliers
Fixtures, Furniture, and Equipment ⁶	\$3732,000	\$45,4004,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
POS System ⁷	\$1,000	\$2,500	As arranged	As invoiced	POS Supplier
Back Office Computer Hardware and Software	\$1,000	\$1,000	As incurred	On demand	Suppliers
Smallwares, Uniforms, and Initial Supplies	\$2,750	\$3,250	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Utility Deposits	\$500	\$600	As arranged	As invoiced	Utility service providers
Professional Services ⁸	\$2,500	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Accountants, lawyers, etc.
Initial Inventory ⁹	\$7,500	\$128,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Insurance ¹⁰	\$2,000	\$3,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Insurance Broker
Training Expenses ¹¹	\$1,000	\$2,500	As invoiced	As arranged	Airline, Hotel and Restaurants
Grand Opening Advertising	\$1,000	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Additional Funds – Three months ¹²	\$5,000	\$20 15,000	As incurred	As incurred	Employees, third party vendors and suppliers
Total ^{13, 14}	\$222,250 750	\$474,750 409,350			

YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT

INITIAL FOR EACH STORE UNDER THE THREE PACK PROGRAM PROGRAM¹⁵

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Initial Franchise Fee ¹⁵	\$33,167	\$33,167	Lump sum	When you sign the Franchise Agreement	US
Lease Security Deposit ²	\$3,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Rent ² Rent (3 months' estimate) ²	\$5 2,000	\$20 7,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Architect and Permitting Fees	\$10,000 12,500	\$20,000	As arranged	As required by architect and municipality	Architect, city and municipality
Water, sewer, and Municipality Impact Fees ³	\$0	\$25 20,000	As arranged	As required by municipality	Municipality
Leasehold Improvements ⁴	\$130 103,000	\$230 203,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Contractor(s)
Signage ⁵	\$26 0,000	\$20 14,000	As arranged	As required by sign vendor	Suppliers

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Fixtures, Furniture, and Equipment ⁶	\$ 3732 ,000	\$ 45,400 <u>0,000</u>	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
POS System ⁷ <u>System (3-month fee)</u> ⁷	\$1,000	\$2,500	As arranged	As invoiced	POS Supplier
Back Office Computer Hardware and Software	\$1,000	\$1,000	As incurred	On demand	Suppliers
Smallwares, Uniforms, and Initial Supplies	\$2,750	\$3,250	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Utility Deposits	\$500	\$600	As arranged	As invoiced	Utility service providers
Professional Services ⁸	\$2,500	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Accountants, lawyers, etc.
Initial Inventory ⁹	\$7,500	\$ 128 ,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Insurance ¹⁰	\$2,000	\$3,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Insurance Broker
Training Expenses ¹¹	\$1,000	\$2,500	As invoiced	As arranged	Airline, Hotel and Restaurants
Grand Opening Advertising	\$1,000	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Additional Funds - Three Months ¹²	\$5,000	\$ 2015 ,000	As incurred	As incurred	Employees, third party vendors and suppliers
Total ^{13, 14}	\$ 244,417 <u>215,917</u>	\$ 468,417 <u>403,017</u>			

~~YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT~~
~~SECOND AND THIRD STORE UNDER THE THREE PACK PROGRAM~~

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Initial Franchise Fee ¹⁵	\$33,167	\$33,167	Lump sum	When you sign the Franchise Agreement	US

Type of Expenditure	Amount		Method of Payment	When Due	To Whom Payment is to be Made
	Low	High			
Lease Security Deposit ²	\$3,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Rent ²	\$5,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Landlord
Architect and Permitting Fees	\$10,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As required by architect and municipality	Architect, city and municipality
Water, sewer, and Municipality Impact Fees ³	\$0	\$25,000	As arranged	As required by municipality	Municipality
Leasehold Improvements ⁴	\$130,000	\$230,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Contractor(s)
Signage ⁵	\$2,000	\$20,000	As arranged	As required by sign vendor	Suppliers
Fixtures, Furniture, and Equipment ⁶	\$37,000	\$45,400	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
POS System ⁷	\$1,000	\$2,500	As arranged	As invoiced	POS Supplier
Back Office Computer Hardware and Software	\$1,000	\$1,000	As incurred	On demand	Suppliers
Smallwares, Uniforms, and Initial Supplies	\$2,750	\$3,250	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Utility Deposits	\$500	\$600	As arranged	As invoiced	Utility service providers
Professional Services ⁸	\$2,500	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Accountants, lawyers, etc.
Initial Inventory ⁹	\$7,500	\$12,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Insurance ¹⁰	\$2,000	\$3,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Insurance Broker
Grand Opening Advertising	\$1,000	\$5,000	As arranged	As invoiced	Suppliers
Additional Funds— Three Months ¹²	\$5,000	\$20,000	As incurred	As incurred	Employees, third party vendors and suppliers
Total ^{13, 14}	\$243,417	\$465,917			

Notes

Note 1. See Item 5 for more information about the initial franchise fee.

Note 2. We anticipate that the Restaurant will occupy ~~750,450~~ to 1,200,000 square feet of commercial space. Commercial real estate costs vary greatly depending on geographic location and whether the property is a free-standing location, high rise, strip center, or mall location. Depending on various factors, base rent and other lease charges can range anywhere from ~~\$1520~~ to ~~\$250125~~ or more per square foot. These ~~figures do not factor in~~ estimates include a month's common area maintenance charges ~~or any~~ and other triple net charges ~~that may be~~ imposed under your lease. You should consult a broker in the area in which you plan to operate your Restaurant.

Note 3. Impact fees are also sometimes called water and sewer tap fees, and are the fees charged by municipalities to pay for all or a portion of the costs of providing public services, such as water and sewer, to the business. This amount is determined solely by the municipality and governing authority and the amounts vary greatly by jurisdiction. We highly recommend that you contact the appropriate authority to investigate the amount of these fees in your area.

Note 4. Construction costs vary widely, depending upon the location, design, configuration and condition of the premises. These figures represent the estimated cost of building out a ~~warm-vanilla boxshell~~ located in a strip mall that already has a sufficient HVAC system, grease trap and floor drains, ADA-compliant restrooms, and ~~appropriate~~ 200-amp utility service panel. ~~These estimates assume that plumbing is roughed in and ready for hook-ups, minus the estimated up, that walls are sheet-rocked, taped, primed, and ready for paint and finishing. These estimates do not include a tenant improvement allowance. The figures do not include the, which may reduce your costs of demolition and/or relocation of existing restrooms, plumbing, grease traps, the installation of HVAC system, or other remodeling that may be incurred when remodeling a second-generation commercial space.~~ The cost of construction and leasehold improvements ~~depends upon~~ will vary based on the size, condition, and location of the Restaurant and the local cost of labor.

Note 5. These estimates include one exterior sign, and interior signage, menu boards, and graphics.

Note 6. These estimates represent the estimated costs of purchasing required fixtures, furniture, and equipment and decor items.

Note 7. These estimates include the cost ~~of acquiring one leasing the~~ POS system ~~and the first annual maintenance and support services for three months. The monthly~~ fee is approximately \$600 per month.

Note 8. These figures represent the estimated cost of engaging an attorney to help you review the franchise offering and forming a legal entity to operate the franchise. These estimates do not include amounts that you may pay an attorney for reviewing your lease or amounts that you may pay an accountant or bookkeeper for setting up your books or for bookkeeping services.

Note 9. These figures represent the estimated cost of purchasing food and beverage inventory, condiments, supplies, and other miscellaneous items.

Note 10. These figures represent the estimated annual premium costs for the insurance coverage that we require (see Item 8). It does not include the cost of business interruption insurance or employment practices liability insurance (EPLI) or other insurance coverages that you may elect to carry.

Note 11. See Item 11 for more information about our initial training program. The amounts in the chart represent the estimated out-of-pocket costs (including travel to and from the training site, one double-occupancy hotel room, and dining expenses) for two individuals to attend training.

Note 12. The amounts in the chart represent the additional funds, or working capital, you will likely need to operate the business before opening and during the initial three-month period. You may need these funds to pay fixed operating expenses, such as employee salaries, payroll taxes, utility charges, license and permit fees, and to purchase uniforms, supplies, and collateral merchandise. The amounts in the chart do not

include any allowance for debt service or for a salary for you. ~~These amounts are estimates only, and we cannot assure you that you will not have additional expenses. Your actual costs will depend on factors like your management skills, experience, and business acumen.~~ You should review these numbers carefully with your business advisor before purchasing a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise. To compile these estimates, we relied on our affiliates' and franchisees' experience in building new Restaurants. ~~Your actual working capital needs during the initial period may vary significantly depending upon the following factors, which are beyond our control: how closely you follow our methods and procedures; your management skill, experience, and business acumen; local market and economic conditions; the prevailing wage rate; competition; and the sales level reached during the initial period.~~ You should review these figures carefully with a business advisor before deciding to purchase a franchise.

Note 13. All amounts are non-refundable unless otherwise noted. Neither we nor our affiliate finances any part of the initial investment.

Note 14. If you are developing three Restaurants under our Three Pack program, we estimate that the initial investment for each ~~restaurant~~Restaurant will be substantially the same as reflected above, ~~subject to inflationary increase~~, except that you will pay the discounted initial franchise fee as provided under the Three Pack Addendum (see Item 5). ~~The figures in the chart are based on current estimates and assume that all three Restaurants at the same time. The figures in the chart do not account for potential future changes to buildout or equipment requirements or for inflationary increases.~~

~~Note 15. This amount represents the individual store's franchise fee under our Three Pack program, subject to inflationary increase.~~

ITEM 8 RESTRICTIONS ON SOURCES OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

Purchases from Approved Suppliers; Purchases According to Specifications

We may require you to purchase from approved or designated suppliers or distributors ("Approved Suppliers") all products and services necessary to construct the Restaurant location (including fixtures, furniture, equipment, signs, décor items, audio/visual systems) and to operate the Franchised Business (including food and beverage items and ingredients, other consumables such as cups, bowls, straws, and napkins, work apparel, all items intended for retail sale, advertising and marketing materials, gift cards, insurance, and accounting and bookkeeping services). We also may require you to engage our designated tenant representative to assist you with site selection activities. You must purchase the POS computer hardware and software from our approved suppliers. If a designated music provider has been identified, you must acquire music from the designated provider.

Currently, neither we nor our affiliates are approved suppliers or the only supplier of any products or services. None of our officers hold an interest in any of our privately held suppliers or a material interest in any publicly held suppliers.

If we have not identified designated or approved suppliers for a particular item or service, you may purchase from any supplier so long as the item or service meets our specifications and standards, which may include brand requirements. If we have identified designated or approved suppliers for a particular item or service and you wish to purchase from a different supplier, you may request our approval. We have no obligation to consider your request, but if we do consider your request, we may require that you provide us samples of the supplier's products and pay us \$1,000 or our actual costs in evaluating the proposed supplier, whichever is less, plus reimburse us for our relate costs in travel, lodging, and salary costs in performing the evaluation. In evaluating the supplier, we will consider factors including the supplier's financial stability, business reputation, delivery capabilities, credit rating, and the effect that approving an alternate supplier will have on our existing distribution relationships. We will use commercially reasonable efforts to notify you of our decision within 30 days.

We will communicate to you our supplier requirements and specifications, and changes to these requirements, by way of changes to the Operations Manual or otherwise in writing.

Site Selection and Lease

You must acquire a site for your Restaurant that meets our site selection criteria and that we approve. If you occupy the Restaurant according to a commercial lease, the lease must contain terms that we specify. (See Lease Rider attached as Attachment F to the Franchise Agreement.) You must purchase and install, at your expense, all millwork and customized seating, fixtures, furnishings, equipment, decor, and signs from an approved third-party supplier.

Insurance

You must acquire the types of insurance coverage with the minimum limits that we require, which may be modified periodically. We currently require the following minimum coverages:

Type of Insurance	Minimum Amount
Commercial General Liability including Product Liability and Personal and Advertising Injury	\$1,000,000 per occurrence; \$2,000,000 general aggregate (unless landlord requires a higher amount)
Fire Legal Liability: Damages to franchise premises	\$500,000
Medical Expenses	\$1,000 any one person
Professional liability including abuse and molestation (for owners and W2 employees)	\$1,000,000 per occurrence
Hired and Non-Owned Auto Liability	\$1,000,000 combined single limit
Property – Special Form, including mechanical breakdown and plate glass	\$300,000
Improvements and Betterments	Included
Business Income (12 months)	Actual loss sustained
Crime (employee dishonesty, theft and robbery)	\$10,000 per occurrence
Cyber Liability (internet security and privacy insurance)	coverage of \$250,000 per occurrence for risks relating to information technology infrastructure and activities, including internet-based activities, data breaches, and other security compromises.
Employment Practices Liability Insurance (inclusive of first and third party)	\$50,000
Property and Crime Deductible	\$1,000
Defense Costs	In addition to policy limits
Commercial Excess Liability	\$1,000,000 per occurrence and \$1,000,000 general aggregate (unless landlord requires a higher amount)

In addition to these coverages, you must carry workers' compensation and employer's liability coverage as required by the jurisdiction in which you operate the franchise.

All required insurance must be obtained from a responsible carrier or carriers acceptable to us (generally an AM Best rating of A- or better). All of the policies must name us and anyone else we designate with an insurable interest as additional insured and must include a waiver of subrogation in favor of each additional insured.

Revenue Derived from Franchisee Purchases and Leases

We and our affiliates may derive revenue from franchisee purchases and leases to the extent that franchisees purchase products or services from us or our affiliates. ~~We currently have~~Our affiliate, Nautical Bowls Ventures, LLC, also has an arrangement with ~~our preferred distributor~~certain suppliers whereby ~~the distributor makes periodic payments to us (ranging from two to 10 percent of costs) based on franchisee purchases, or leases, which could range from one to 10 percent.~~

During our fiscal year ended December 31, ~~2023, 2022, neither~~ we ~~nor our affiliates~~ derived ~~any~~no revenue on account of franchisee purchases or leases ~~as of the date of~~. During this same period, our affiliate, Nautical Bowls Ventures LLC derived \$415,129 from franchisee purchases and leases, which funds were used to supplement the National Marketing Fund and to fund franchise disclosure document support services.

Estimated Proportion of Required Purchases and Leases to all Purchases and Leases

We estimate that your purchases and leases from us or our designated sources will range from 60% to 90% of your total initial investment (not including the initial franchise fee or real estate costs) and approximately 75% to 95% of your ongoing purchases and leases in the operation of the Franchised Business.

Description of Purchasing Cooperatives; Purchasing Arrangements

We may negotiate purchase arrangements with primary suppliers or distributors for the benefit of franchisees. We do not provide material benefits to you (for example, renewal or granting additional franchises) based on your purchase of particular products or services or use of particular suppliers.

Presently, there are no purchasing or distribution cooperatives in existence for the franchise system.

**ITEM 9
FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS**

This table lists your principal obligations under the franchise agreement and other agreements. It will help you find more detailed information about your obligations in these agreements and in other items of this disclosure document.

Obligation	Section(s) in Franchise Agreement	Disclosure Document Item
a. Site selection and acquisition/lease	Sections 3.1 and 3.3	Items 8 and 11
b. Pre-opening purchases/leases	Sections 3.4, 6.5, 6.6, 10.1, and 10.2	Items 5, 6, 7, 8, and 11
c. Site development and other pre-opening requirements	Sections 3.4 and 5.3	Items 1, 7, 8, and 11
d. Initial and ongoing training	Sections 5.1 and 5.5	Items 6, 7, and 11
e. Opening	Sections 3.5 and 5.2	Items 7 and 11

Obligation	Section(s) in Franchise Agreement	Disclosure Document Item
f. Fees	Sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.8, 4.9, 4.11, 9.3, 9.4, and 9.5	Items 5, 6, 7, 8, and 11
g. Compliance with standards and policies/Manuals	Article 8	Items 8, 11, 14, and 16
h. Trademarks and proprietary information	Article 7	Items 11, 13, and 14
i. Restrictions on products/services offered	Sections 1.1, 6.4, 6.5 and 6.8	Items 8 and 16
j. Warranty and customer service requirements	Sections 4.4 and 6.1	Item 16
k. Territorial development and sales quotas	Not applicable	Item 12
l. Ongoing product/service purchases	Sections 6.5, 6.6 and 8.2	Items 8, 11, and 16
m. Maintenance, appearance and remodeling requirements	Sections 6.7 and 6.10	Item 8
n. Insurance	Article 11.2	Items 7 and 8
o. Advertising	Article 9	Items 6, 8, and 11
p. Indemnification	Section 11.3	Item 6
q. Owner's participation/ management/staffing	Sections 6.2 and 6.3	Items 1, 11, and 15
r. Records and reports	Sections 10.4, 10.5, and 10.6	Item 11
s. Inspections and audits	Sections 6.9 and 10.7	Items 6 and 11
t. Transfer	Article 12	Items 6, 12, and 17
u. Renewal or extension of rights	Section 2.2	Items 6, 12, and 17
v. Post-termination obligations	Article 14 and Section 15.2	Item 17
w. Noncompetition covenants	Section 15.1 and 15.2	Item 17
x. Dispute resolution	Article 19	Item 17
y. Guaranty	Sections 12.3 and 18.6	Item 15

**ITEM 10
FINANCING**

We do not offer direct or indirect financing, and we do not guarantee your notes, leases, or other obligations.

ITEM 11

FRANCHISOR'S ASSISTANCE, ADVERTISING, COMPUTER SYSTEMS, AND TRAINING

Except as listed below, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC is not required to provide you with any assistance.

Before you open your Restaurant, we or our designee will:

1. Consider and permit or decline to permit development of a Restaurant at a proposed site within 10 days of receiving all requested information. (Franchise Agreement, Section 3.2.)
2. Admit up to three individuals to our initial training program, described below. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.1.)
3. With regard to the first Restaurant you develop, make available at least one of our representatives to provide up to three days of opening assistance. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.2.1.)
4. With regard to the first Restaurant you develop, at your request, provide additional opening assistance, subject to the availability of personnel, in consideration for a per diem fee and reimbursement of all travel, lodging, dining, and wages' costs for the individuals providing additional assistance. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.2.1.)
5. Provide you access to our Manuals. (Franchise Agreement, Section 8.1.) The Table of Contents of our Confidential Operations Manual is attached to this disclosure document as Exhibit D. Our Confidential Operations Manual is 200 pages.
6. Provide pre-opening consultation and advice as we deem appropriate, which may include advice with regard to the development and operation of the Restaurant, building layout, furnishings, fixtures, and equipment, plans and specifications, employee recruiting, selection, and training, purchasing and inventory control, and other matters as we deem appropriate. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.3.)

During the operation of your Restaurant, we will:

1. Provide ongoing consultation and advice as we deem appropriate, which may include information about new product development, instruction concerning the operation and management of a Restaurant, advertising and marketing advice, and financial and accounting advice. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.4.)
2. Communicate to you information about our Approved Suppliers. (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.6.)
3. Maintain a central web site that will identify the location of your Restaurant and provide other information to promote the NAUTICAL BOWLS System. (Franchise Agreement, Section 9.8.)
4. We have the right, but not obligation, to establish maximum, minimum, or other retail pricing requirements to the extent permitted by law. (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.11)

Advertising

Our advertising program for the products and services offered by NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants currently consists of social media advertising and coupon and flyer distribution. Our advertising materials currently are created in-house and created by an outside advertising agency.

You may use your own advertising and promotional materials so long as we have approved both the materials and the proposed use. All materials must be submitted to us before first publication or use, and we will use best efforts to notify you of our approval decision within 10 days of their receipt. Materials that are not approved within this 10-day period are considered not approved.

We have an advisory council composed of five elected franchisees, which are elected by a majority vote of the franchisees. We reserve the right to form, change, and dissolve the advertising council.

Grand Opening Advertising

Before the Restaurant opens for business, you must conduct a grand opening advertising event that conforms to our standards and specifications.

National Marketing Fund

In addition to your initial advertising campaign, you must contribute to our National Marketing Fund (“Fund”) an amount equal to 2% of your Gross Revenue, which contribution will be collected in the same manner as the Royalty Fee.

We may use Fund monies to pay for creative development services (including creation and modification of Restaurant design and trade dress, logos, graphics and vehicle wraps, and advertising and promotional items, including the cost of photography services and design software); preparing and procuring market studies, providing or obtaining marketing services (including, conducting customer surveys, focus groups, and marketing and compliance-related mystery shops and customer interviews); employing advertising and/or public relations agencies; developing, producing, distributing and placing advertising (including, without limitation, preparing and conducting media advertising campaigns in various media, local Restaurant advertising and promotion in a particular area or market, or for the benefit of a particular Restaurant or Restaurants concerning Restaurant opening promotion or otherwise, conducting and administering in-store promotions; preparing and executing direct mail advertising, and developing, producing and purchasing point-of-sale advertising, and other sales aids and promotional items and materials); new product development and development of product packaging; developing, updating and hosting our web site (including development of locator programs) and/or an intranet or extranet system; obtaining sponsorships and endorsements; preparing and conducting sweepstakes and other promotions; developing, administering, and distributing coupons, gift card and loyalty programs, and customized promotions, and the cost of product associated with the redemption of free coupons, gift cards, loyalty cards and/or other customized promotions; developing and administering other customer loyalty programs; developing and administering online ordering platforms; providing and procuring public relations services; conducting public relations activities; charitable donations; membership fees in international, national, regional, and/or local trade or other associations or organizations. We also may use Fund monies to reimburse ourselves for our costs of personnel and other administrative and overhead costs associated with providing the services described in this paragraph.

We will administer the Fund. We will not use Fund monies for creating or placing any advertisement that is principally a solicitation for new franchisees, but we may include in all advertising prepared using Fund monies (including online advertising) information concerning franchise opportunities, and a portion of Fund monies may be used to create and maintain one or more pages on our web site devoted to advertising franchise opportunities and identifying and screening inquiries and applications submitted by franchise candidates. Any amounts contributed to the Fund that are not spent in the year they are collected will remain in the Fund for use during the next year.

Although not contractually required to do so, we anticipate that each Restaurant owned by us or an affiliate of ours will contribute to the Fund on the same basis as our franchisees. Upon your written request with a minimum of 30 days’ notice, we will provide you an annual unaudited statement of Fund contributions and expenditures. In our last fiscal year ending December 31, 2022, Fund contributions were spent as follows: 34% on administrative and payroll expenses, 63% on production, and 2% on other expenditures.

Local Marketing

We recommend, but do not require, that you spend 2% of Gross Revenue on a quarterly basis to promote the Restaurant in your market area.

Advertising Cooperative

We can designate any geographic area in which two or more company-owned or franchised NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants are located as a region for an advertising cooperative (“Cooperative”). If a Cooperative is established for an area in which any Restaurant is located, you must become a member of the Cooperative and participate in the Cooperative. Cooperative contributions will be maintained and administered under the Cooperative’s governing documents, and the Cooperative will be operated solely as a conduit for the collection and expenditure of advertising contributions. Contribution levels will be established by majority vote, with each Restaurant entitled to one vote. We anticipate that franchisor-owned Restaurants will contribute to the fund on the same basis as franchisees.

We have the sole right to form, change, dissolve, and merge Cooperatives and to create and amend any organizational and governing documents of any Cooperative. As no Cooperatives have yet been established for the franchise system, governing documents are not available for your review. Once established, we may terminate and/or dissolve the Cooperative at any time. The Cooperative will not be terminated, however, until all monies in the Cooperative have been expended for authorized purposes or returned to contributing Restaurants (whether franchised or company or affiliate-owned), without interest, on the basis determined by a majority vote of its members. Each Cooperative must prepare annual, unaudited financial statements, which will be made available to its contributing members.

Computer and Electronic Cash Register Systems

You must purchase, install, and maintain an electronic point of sale cash register system to record sales and transaction data and track inventory purchases. To operate the POS System, you will need to connect to a high-speed communications device which is capable of accessing the Internet via a third-party network. We have the right to independently access all information and financial data recorded by the system for daily polling, audit, and sales verification. Updates or replacement of the POS System, both hardware and software, may be required. There is no contractual limitation on the frequency or cost of these obligations.

The estimated cost of purchasing the POS System ranges from \$1,600 to \$1,850. You must sign a computer maintenance agreement with the manufacturer of the POS System and pay a maintenance fee which currently ranges from \$150 to \$300 a month.

At our request, you must install and maintain interactive multi-media equipment, devices, and facilities that we require, including approved surveillance systems, music systems, Wi-Fi, and other wireless Internet and communications systems and interactive displays, including plasma or LCD screens. If a designated music provider has been identified, you must acquire music from the vendor.

You must (a) use any software, system documentation manuals, and other proprietary materials that we require concerning the operation of the Restaurant; (b) input and maintain in your computer this data and information as we prescribe; and (c) purchase or acquire new or upgraded software, system documentation manuals, and other materials at then-current prices whenever we adopt new requirements system-wide. You must enter into all software license agreements, subscription agreements, “terms of use” agreements, and software maintenance agreements, in the form and manner we prescribe, and pay all fees imposed.

We may independently poll your Gross Revenues and other information input and compiled by your POS System from a remote location. There is no limitation on our right to access this information. Neither we, nor our affiliates, nor any third parties must provide ongoing maintenance, repairs, upgrades, or updates to your POS System or other computer equipment. Except as described above, there are currently no optional or required maintenance/upgrade contracts for the POS System or other computer equipment.

Training

At least 30 days before your Restaurant’s opening date, your Key Person and at least one other person must attend and complete our initial training program to our satisfaction. Our initial training program consists of a four-day training, is conducted on an as-needed basis in Minnetonka, Minnesota. Initial training will be

conducted by or under the supervision of Bryant Amundson and Rachel Amundson. Bryant and Rachel Amundson co-founded the NAUTICAL BOWLS concept in 2018 and have been affiliated with us since that time.

We provide instructors and training materials at no charge, but you must pay all training-related expenses, including travel, lodging, and dining expenses for all of your employees who attend training. The subjects covered and other information relevant to our initial training program are described below.

TRAINING PROGRAM

Subject	Hours of Classroom Training	Hours of On-the-Job Training	Location
Company Overview	1	-	Corporate Headquarters
Company Culture	2 <u>1</u>	-	Corporate Headquarters
Recruiting	2 <u>1</u>	1	Corporate Headquarters
Team Building	<u>1-2</u>	1	Corporate Headquarters
Product Information	<u>1-2</u>	1	Corporate Headquarters
Back-of-house (backend)	<u>2-3</u>	10-12 <u>1-2</u>	Corporate Headquarters/ Operating Corporate Location
Bowl Line (backend)	2	5-10 <u>1-2</u>	Corporate Headquarters/ Operating Corporate Location
Back-of-house (in person)	-	5-10 <u>1-2</u>	Operating Corporate Location
Bowl Line (in person)	-	10-15 <u>1-2</u>	Operating Corporate Location
Guest Seating & Experience	<u>1-2</u>	<u>1-2-5</u>	Corporate Headquarters/ Operating Corporate Location
Total	16 <u>10-14</u>	35-55 <u>8-13</u>	

Note 1. We may require that you complete this training either before, or shortly after, the Restaurant opens for business.

Our initial training program is subject to change, without notice, to reflect updates in the materials, methods, manuals, and changes in personnel. The subjects taught and the time periods allocated for each subject may vary based on the experience of the trainees. Instruction materials are our Operations Manuals.

At our request, other personnel whom we designate must attend additional courses, seminars, and training programs that we may reasonably require. We may charge a reasonable tuition for these additional courses, seminars, or other training programs. You are responsible for all training-related costs and expenses including salary, travel, lodging, and dining costs for all of your employees who attend training.

Periodically, we may offer additional training programs and we may charge a fee for attending these training programs. -You must also pay the travel and living expenses and supply costs for you and your employees. If you designate a new Key Person after the initial training program, the new general manager must complete the training to our satisfaction. We reserve the right to charge a fee to train any replacement general manager. In addition, we may hold and require that your Key Person or other designated employees attend any conference, meeting, convention or seminar to present new methods and programs for operation, training, management, sales or marketing and we reserve the right to charge you a fee (currently, \$129 per franchise) to attend any conference, meeting or convention we hold. Additionally, if you fail to attend our annual convention, or other not more than quarterly scheduled conventions or workshops, we reserve the right to charge you our then-current non-attendance fee (currently \$1,000 per franchise).

Confidential Operations Manuals

After you sign the franchise agreement, we will provide you access to our Manuals. A copy of the table of contents of our Confidential Operations Manual is attached as Exhibit D.

Site Selection and Opening

When you sign the franchise agreement, we will agree on a “Site Selection Area” within which you may locate the Restaurant. You must acquire a Restaurant site meeting our site selection criteria within six months after you sign the franchise agreement. We generally do not own or lease the Site to you. For each proposed site that you identify, you must deliver to us a franchise site application in a form that we prescribe, including information about the site as we may reasonably request to perform our evaluation. We will communicate to you our decision whether or not to permit development of the Restaurant at the proposed site within 10 business days of receiving all requested information about the site. The criteria that we use to evaluate the site include general location and neighborhood, traffic patterns, parking, size, physical characteristics of existing buildings, and lease terms.

When the site is selected, we will mutually agree on an “Opening Date” for the Restaurant, which will be no later than a year after you sign the franchise agreement or six months after site selection, whichever occurs first. The Restaurant must be open for business by the Opening Date. Factors which may affect the length of time between signing the franchise agreement and opening for business include the time necessary to find a location, to negotiate a lease, to obtain required financing, to obtain permits and license, to complete construction and leasehold improvements, to complete our initial training program, and to adequately train your personnel. Delay in construction may be caused by inclement weather, material or labor shortages, labor actions, slow deliveries, equipment shortages, or similar factors. If the Restaurant is not open according by these deadlines, we can terminate the franchise agreement.

ITEM 12 TERRITORY

You will not receive an exclusive territory. You may face competition from other franchisees, from outlets that we own, or from other channels of distribution or competitive brands that we control.

Franchise Agreement

When the Franchise Agreement is signed, we will agree on a “Site Selection Area”, and you will begin looking for a site within the Site Selection Area to develop your Restaurant. It is your responsibility to select a site for the Restaurant that meets our site selection criteria, and we must accept your selection before you sign a lease. There is no territorial protection within the Site Selection Area, meaning that other franchisees may also be looking for sites within the area at the same time you are looking for sites.

Once you have identified a site that meets our criteria and we have accepted your selection, we will identify an area around the site as your “Protected Area.” -Your Protected Area will be of the size and configuration that we determine, in our sole discretion, which may be identified on a map, by geographic description, or by radius, but will consist of at least a quarter-mile radius surrounding your Restaurant. Before you sign a

lease, we will complete Attachment B to the Franchise Agreement with the Restaurant address and Protected Area.

During the term, we will not develop or permit anyone else to develop another NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant in your Protected Area, with the exception of venues that we consider “Captive Markets.” “Captive Markets” are venues with a captive market of foot traffic, such as military bases, airports, travel plazas, enclosed shopping malls, school campuses, and family entertainment venues. We may operate and grant others the right to operate NAUTICAL BOWLS businesses in Captive Markets within your Protected Area.

Your territorial protection extends only to NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurants. We and our affiliates may develop and operate other restaurants offering similar or different menu items under a different trademark in your Protected Area, however, neither we nor our affiliates have any present plans to do so.

We reserve to ourselves all rights not expressly granted to you under the franchise agreement. These include the right to distribute products and services identified by the Marks, such as pre-packaged products, through alternative channels of distribution including grocery stores, supermarkets, convenience stores, restaurants, and via online, mail order, and catalog sales. We are not required to compensate you if we exercise any of the rights specified above inside your Protected Area. You are not permitted to use alternative channels of distribution including grocery stores, supermarkets, convenience stores, restaurants, and via online, mail order, and catalog sales. We also have the right to establish commissaries and catering facilities. If a catering order requires delivery into your Protected Area, we may elect to fulfill the order ourselves (or through an affiliate), in which case we will credit to you the amount of the sale, less applicable taxes, and our reasonable cost of fulfilling the order. You are permitted to accept orders from customers located outside your Protected Area.

You may relocate the Restaurant, only with our prior written consent. We will consent to relocation if your lease expires or terminates through no fault of yours, or if the Restaurant premises is destroyed or materially damaged by fire, flood, or other natural catastrophe and you are not in default of the franchise agreement or any other agreement with us.

There are no circumstances that permit us to modify your territorial rights under the franchise agreement. Unless we have mutually agreed otherwise, we do not grant you any options or rights of first refusal to acquire additional franchises.

ITEM 13 TRADEMARKS

We own and have registered the following principal trademarks on the Principal Register of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. All required affidavits and renewals have been filed.

Mark	Registration Number	Registration Date	International Class
NAUTICAL BOWLS (Standard Character Mark)	6542578	November 2, 2021	043
	6543126	November 2, 2021	043
SUPER FOODS. SUPER LIFE. (Standard Character Mark)	5998030	February 25, 2020	043

There is no presently effective determination of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, the Trademark Trial

and Appeal Board, the trademark administrator of any state or any court, nor any pending infringement, opposition, or cancellation proceeding, nor any pending material litigation involving the Marks which is relevant to their ownership, use, or licensing.

We know of no superior prior rights or infringing use that could materially affect your use of the Marks, and we know of no agreements currently in effect which significantly limit our rights to use or license the use of the Marks in any manner material to the franchise.

You may use only the Marks that we designate, must use them only in the manner that we authorize and permit, and must use them with the symbols, “®”, “™”, or “SM”, as appropriate. You may use the Marks only for the operation and promotion of the Franchised Business and only in the manner we prescribe. You may not contest ownership or validity of the Marks or any registration of the Marks or our right to use or to sublicense the use of the Marks. You must sign all documents that we require in order to protect the Marks and to maintain their validity and enforceability.

You may not use the Marks or any part of the Marks in your corporate name, and you may not use them to incur any obligation or indebtedness on our behalf.

You may not use the Marks or any part or derivative of the Mark on the Internet, except as expressly permitted in writing. This prohibition includes use of the Marks or any derivative of the Marks as part of any URL or domain name, as well as their registration as part of any user name on any gaming website or social networking web site (such as GOOGLE MY BUSINESS, YELP, FACEBOOK, INSTAGRAM, or TWITTER), whether or not such social media platform is used for commercial gain, or as part of any unauthorized email address.

You must promptly notify us of any suspected unauthorized use of, or any challenge to the validity of the Marks or Copyrighted Works (defined below in Item 14), or any challenge to our ownership of, or license to use and to license others to use, or your right to use, the Marks or Copyrighted Works. We have the right to direct and control any administrative proceeding or litigation or other adjudicative proceeding involving the Marks or Copyrighted Works, including any settlement of the proceeding. We or our affiliate has the right, but is not obligated, to take action against uses by others that may constitute infringement of the Marks or Copyrighted Works. We will defend you against any third-party claim, suit, or demand arising out of your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Works. If we determine that you have used the Marks and Copyrighted Works properly, we will pay the cost of the defense, including the cost of any judgment or settlement. If we determine that you were using the Marks or Copyrighted Works improperly, you must pay the cost of the defense, including the cost of any judgment or settlement. In regard to any litigation under your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Works, you must sign all documents that we require and do all things that we consider necessary to carry out the defense or prosecution, which may include becoming a nominal party to any legal action. Unless the action is the result of your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Marks in a manner inconsistent with the terms of the franchise agreement, we will reimburse you for your out-of-pocket litigation costs in doing these acts.

We have the right to designate new, modified and/or replacement Marks for your use and to require you to use the new, modified or replacement Marks in addition to or in lieu of any previously designated Marks. You must comply with the directive, at your expense, within 60 days following your receipt of written notice of the change.

ITEM 14 PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION

There are no patents or registered copyrights that are material to the franchise, and there are no pending patent applications. We do claim copyright protection and proprietary rights in the original materials used in the System, including our recipes and procedures, menus, manuals, bulletins, correspondence and communications with our franchisees, training, advertising, and promotional materials, the content and

designed of our web site, and other written materials under the operation of NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants and the System (“Copyrighted Works”).

There is no presently effective determination of the U.S. Copyright Office (Library of Congress) or any court affecting our copyrights. There is no currently effective agreement that limits our right to use and/or license our copyrights. We are not obligated by the franchise agreement, or otherwise, to protect any rights you have to use the copyrights. We have no actual knowledge of any infringements that could materially affect the ownership, use, or licensing of the copyrights. You may not use any of our copyrighted works on the Internet without our written permission. This includes display of the copyrighted works on commercial websites, gaming websites, and social networking web sites (such as GOOGLE MY BUSINESS, YELP, FACEBOOK, INSTAGRAM, or TWITTER).

You and your employees must maintain the confidentiality of all information contained in the Manual and other information that we consider confidential, proprietary or trade secret information. “Confidential Information” means all trade secrets, the Standards, and other elements of the System; all customer information; all information contained in the Manuals; our proprietary recipes and standards and specifications for product preparation, packaging and service; financial information; marketing data; vendor and supplier information; all other knowledge, trade secrets, or know-how concerning the methods of operation of the Franchised Business which may be communicated to you, or of which you may be apprised, by virtue of their operation under the terms of the franchise agreement, and all other information that we designate.

ITEM 15 OBLIGATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ACTUAL OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS

Your NAUTICAL BOWLS businesses must be supervised by an individual you designate as your “Key Person.”

Your Key Person is the individual who will be responsible for communicating with us on all matters concerning the Franchised Business. This individual will be identified when the franchise agreement is signed, and must satisfy our training requirements. Your Key Person may, but need not, have an equity interest in the franchise. We do not require that your Key Person directly manage operations but do recommend that they provide on-premises supervision as often as possible. You must notify us promptly if your Key Person cannot continue to serve or no longer qualifies for their position and must promptly identify a replacement Key Person and cause the individual to fulfill our training requirements within the following 30 days.

Each Restaurant that you operate must be under the on-premises supervision of an assistant manager (who we call the “Shop Lead”) who has successfully completed our initial training program.

If the franchisee is a business entity, each Owner must sign a Guaranty and Personal Undertaking substantially in the form attached as Attachment D-1 to the Franchise Agreement. A spouse who is not an Owner is not required to sign Attachments D-1. Any individual who attends our initial training program must sign a confidentiality and non-compete agreement substantially in the form attached as Attachment D-2 to the franchise agreement. ~~A spouse who is not an Owner is not required to sign such Attachments.~~ Any personnel with access to our training and confidential information, must sign covenants not to compete and agree to maintain the confidentiality of information they have access to through their relationship with you, in the form attached as Attachment D-2.

ITEM 16 RESTRICTIONS ON WHAT THE FRANCHISEE MAY SELL

You must offer and sell all menu items that we require, and may offer and sell only those menu items that we have approved. We may add, eliminate, or modify authorized goods and services, and we may modify

standards and procedures, all in our sole discretion. We may also add, eliminate, or modify the use of pre-approved vendors and manufacturers providing goods and services. There are no contractual limitations on our rights to make these changes.

Menu items and other food and beverage products may be prepared only by properly trained personnel strictly according to our recipes, cooking techniques, and processes. We always have the right to approve or disapprove in advance all products and services that your business sells. We have the right to add or modify authorized items and services that you must offer and may withdraw our approval of previously authorized items and services. There are no limits on our rights to make these changes.

You may not cobrand with another concept, offer, utilize, or provide catering services (such as from a cart, kiosk, food truck, or other mobile unit) or third-party delivery services (such as UberEATS, DoorDash, Postmates, GrubHub, or other third parties offering delivery) without our prior written consent. You may neither ship products nor distribute products through wholesale channels.

We have the right to establish maximum, minimum, or other retail pricing requirements to the extent permitted by law.

You may not permit in the Restaurant any vending, gaming machines, payphones, automatic teller machines, Internet kiosks, or other mechanical or electrical devices, except for those we require or approve.

**ITEM 17
RENEWAL, TERMINATION, TRANSFER, AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

THE FRANCHISE RELATIONSHIP

This table lists certain important provisions of the franchise and related agreements. You should read these provisions in the franchise agreement attached to this disclosure document.

Franchise Agreement

Provisions	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
a. Length of the franchise term	Sections 2.1	The earlier of 10 years after your Restaurant opens for business, or 11 years after the effective date of your franchise agreement.
b. Renewal or extension of the term	Section 2.2	If you are in good standing, you can renew for additional consecutive five-year terms.
c. Requirements for franchisee to renew or extend	Section 2.2	You must meet all required conditions to renew, including signing our then-current form of franchise agreement, which may be materially different than the form attached to this disclosure document. Other requirements include giving us notice of your intent to renew, compliance with your franchise obligations during the franchise term and at the time of renewal, satisfaction of monetary obligations, having the right to remain in possession of the premises, renovation of the Restaurant to meet our then-current image requirements, compliance with our then-current training requirements, payment of the renewal fee, signing a general release.

Provisions	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
d. Termination by franchisee	No provision	Not applicable <u>No provision, however, you may terminate under any grounds permitted by law.</u>
e. Termination by franchisor without cause	No provision	Not applicable
f. Termination by franchisor with cause	Sections 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, 13.6, and 13.7	We can terminate the franchise agreement for cause, or on account of the for-cause termination of any other franchise agreement between you and us.
g. “Cause” defined – curable defaults	Sections 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, and 13.6	You have 10 days to cure non-payment of fees, violation of any provision of the franchise agreement concerning the use and protection of the Marks or Copyrighted Works or concerning the preparation, service, appearance, or quality of products. You have 30 days to cure non-compliance with defaults not listed in subsection (h), below.
h. “Cause” defined – non-curable defaults	Sections 13.1 and 13.2	We can terminate without opportunity to cure upon the happening of certain bankruptcy or insolvency events, your conviction of a felony, knowingly maintaining false books or records, trademark misuse, failure to successfully complete training, failure to open the Restaurant by the required opening date or within 12 months after signing the franchise by agreement, abandonment of the Restaurant, failure to maintain the right to operate the Restaurant, violation of confidentiality and non-competition covenants, failure to comply with regard to Crisis Management Events, an attempted transfer in violation of the franchise agreement, offering unauthorized products or services, purchase from unapproved suppliers, and repeated curable defaults, whether or not cured.
i. Franchisee’s obligations on termination/ nonrenewal	Article 14	You must cease use of our trademarks, de-identify the premises, pay all amounts due to us, and return the Manuals to us. We may, at our option, assume all telephone numbers for the Restaurant. We may, at our option, assume your lease and purchase certain Restaurant assets. You must, at our option, cancel or assign to us your rights to any Internet websites or web pages or e-mail addresses which contain our Marks. See also “r” below.
j. Assignment of contract by franchisor	Section 12.1	No restriction on our right to assign.

Provisions	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
k. “Transfer” by franchisee – defined	Section 12.2, 12.3, and 12.4	Includes transfer of the agreement or change in ownership of the franchisee entity.
l. Franchisor approval of transfer by franchisee	Section 12.4	Transfers require our prior written consent, which will not be unreasonably withheld. However, transfers that do not result in a change of control of you may, subject to certain conditions described in the franchise agreement, be completed without our prior written consent.
m. Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer	Section 12.4	You must be in compliance with franchise agreement and all other agreements. New franchisee: must qualify, complete training, sign a new franchise agreement in our then-current form (if, unless the term of the new franchise agreement will be the remaining term of the existing franchise agreement), pay an initial franchise fee, and refurbish the Restaurant, as needed. You must: sign a guaranty and a general release, and if applicable our resale program fee, all monetary obligations to us must be satisfied; additional requirements apply to business entities. (see also “r” below).
n. Franchisor’s right of first refusal to acquire franchisee’s business	Section 12.8	We can match any offer for your business.
o. Franchisor’s option to purchase your business	Section 14.4	We have the option to purchase some or all of your equipment, furnishings and fixtures on expiration or termination of your franchise agreement.
p. Death or disability or franchisee	Section 12.9	Same requirements as for transfer in “m” above, except there is no transfer fee and we do not have right of first refusal. If your interest is not transferred within six months following your (or a major member, partner or shareholder’s) death or legal incapacity, your franchise agreement may be terminated.

Provisions	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
q. Non-competition covenants during the term of the franchise	Section 15.1	Neither you nor your Owners may have any involvement with any health food restaurant or any quick-service or fast casual restaurant that derives a significant portion of its income from the sale of health food and/or superfood items within the U.S., its territories or commonwealths, or any other country, province, state or geographic area in which we or our affiliates have used, sought registration of or registered the Marks or similar marks or operate or license others to operate a business under the Marks or similar marks; no diversion of any present or prospective customer of ours to a competitor; no solicitation of ours or any of our Affiliate's management employees. Non-competition covenants are subject to State law.
r. Non-competition covenants after the franchise is terminated or expires	Section 15.2	Neither you nor your Owners may have any involvement with any health food restaurant or any quick-service or fast casual restaurant that derives a significant portion of its income from the sale of health food and/or superfood items, other than the one authorized in the Franchise Agreement, at your former Restaurant location or within a 25-mile radius of your former Restaurant or within a 25-mile radius of any other NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant for two years following expiration, termination or transfer. Non-competition covenants are subject to State law.
s. Modification of the agreement	Sections 18.1 and 18.2	Must be in writing and signed by all parties
t. Integration/merger clause	Sections 18.1 and 18.2	Only the terms of the Franchise Agreement and other related written agreements are binding (subject to applicable state law). However, nothing in the franchise agreement is intended to disclaim or require you to waive reliance on any representation made in this franchise disclosure document.
u. Dispute resolution by arbitration or mediation	Section 19.2 and 19.3	Claims, controversies, or disputes from or relating to the Franchise Agreement must be mediated, except for actions seeking injunctive relief and actions we bring which are related to or based on our Marks or Confidential Information.

Provisions	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
v. Choice of forum	Sections 19.2, 19.3, and 19.4	Mediation in the city where our principal business office is located at the time mediation occurs. Venue for any other proceeding is the courts in the county in which we maintain our principal business office (subject to applicable state law).
w. Choice of law	Section 19.1	Texas law applies without giving effect to any conflict of laws principles (subject to state law).

**ITEM 18
PUBLIC FIGURES**

We do not use any public figure to promote the franchise.

**ITEM 19
FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE REPRESENTATIONS**

The FTC’s Franchise Rule permits a franchisor to provide information about the actual or potential financial performance of its franchised and/or franchisor-owned outlets, if there is a reasonable basis for the information, and if the information is included in the disclosure document. Financial performance information that differs from that included in Item 19 may be given only if: (1) a franchisor provides the actual records of an existing outlet you are considering buying; or (2) a franchisor supplements the information provided in this Item 19, for example, by providing information about possible performance at a particular location or under particular circumstances.

As of December 31, Factual Background, Statement of Bases and Material Assumptions

There were 58 NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurants in the NAUTICAL BOWLS system as of December 31, 2023. Of these restaurants, 23 stores were open for the full 12 months ending December 31, 2023. Sales for these restaurants ranged from \$641,385 to \$261,693. Thirteen of those 23 restaurants had net sales greater than \$440,000, five restaurants had Sales less than \$440,000 but more than \$375,000, and five restaurants had Sales had less than \$375,000.

The following income statement reflects estimated Cost of Goods, Gross Profit, Rent, Crew Labor costs, and other expenses of a restaurant that earns \$440,000 in Sales. These figures assume that the restaurant is owner/operated and that there is no general manager expense. These figures also assume there is no debt financing or other financing expenses or payments.

Projected Income and Expenses for Nautical Bowls Restaurant with Annual Sales of \$400,000

~~2022, there were two franchised restaurants and two affiliate-owned restaurants that had been operating for a full 12 months, or for the full 2022 calendar year. Our principals, Bryant and Rachael Amundson, operated the two NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants for the full 2022 calendar year: one located in Minnetonka, Minnesota and one in Eden Prairie, Minnesota. The Minnetonka NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant opened in 2018. The Eden Prairie NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant opened mid-year in 2020. The following charts provides financial information concerning these two restaurants for calendar year 2022.~~

Minnetonka NAUTICAL BOWLS

~~The following chart reflects sales, costs of goods, and certain operating expenses for the Minnetonka NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurant for calendar year 2022.~~

Minnetonka 2022 Sales and Certain Cost Information	Revenue Dollars	% of Revenue
Gross Sales ¹	-\$ 724,431 <u>\$440,000</u>	-100.00%
Cost of Goods Sold ² <u>Goods</u> ²	-\$ 334,385 <u>\$140,800</u>	49.46 <u>32.00</u> %
Gross Profit ³	-\$ 389,418 <u>\$299,200</u>	57.60 <u>68.00</u> %
Operating Expenses <u>Rent (including CAM, insurance and real estate taxes)</u> ⁴	-\$48,000	-10.91%
Crew Labor Costs ⁴ <u>(wages and payroll taxes)</u> ⁵	-\$ 116,139 <u>\$89,000</u>	17.18 <u>20.23</u> %
Rent ⁵	-\$ 67,102	9.93%
Royalty Fee Adjustment ⁶ <u>Fee</u> ⁶	-\$ 40,902 <u>\$26,400</u>	6.05 <u>00</u> %
National Marketing Fund Contribution ⁷ <u>Fund</u> ⁷	-\$ 14,257 <u>\$8,800</u>	2.44 <u>00</u> %
Local Marketing and Promotion ⁸	-\$ 7,503 <u>\$4,400</u>	1.44 <u>00</u> %
<u>Merchant Account Fees</u> ⁹	<u>\$11,128</u>	<u>2.53</u> %
<u>Store Operations</u> ¹⁰	<u>\$8,800</u>	<u>2.00</u> %
<u>Utilities</u> ¹¹	<u>\$8,200</u>	<u>1.86</u> %
<u>Professional Services</u> ¹²	<u>\$5,300</u>	<u>1.20</u> %
<u>Operating Supplies</u> ¹³	<u>\$2,200</u>	<u>.50</u> %
<u>Repairs and Maintenance</u> ¹⁴	<u>\$2,200</u>	<u>.50</u> %
Utilities ⁹ <u>Business Insurance</u> ¹⁵	-\$ 9,805 <u>\$1,960</u>	1.45%
Computer, and Internet, and Phone ¹⁰ <u>Expenses</u> ¹⁶	-\$ 2,429 <u>\$1,800</u>	0.36 <u>.41</u> %
Repairs and Maintenance ¹¹	-\$ 1,123	0.17%
Store Operations ¹²	-\$ 14,042	2.08%
Professional Fees ¹³	-\$ 3,930	0.58%
Insurance ¹⁴	-\$ 1,959	0.29%
Business License <u>Licenses</u> and Permits ¹⁵ <u>Permits</u> ¹⁷	-\$ 2,060 <u>\$800</u>	0.30 <u>.18</u> %

Minnetonka 2022 Sales and Certain Cost Information	Revenue Dollars	% of Revenue
Merchant Account Fees¹⁶ Uniforms and Apparel¹⁸ and Bank	\$ 29,624 \$500	4.38 .11 %
Total Operating Expense¹⁷ Expenses	\$ 645,262 \$360,288	95.44 81.88 %
Operating Profit¹⁸ Earnings Before Income, Taxes, Depreciation and Amortization (EBITDA)	\$ 79,169 712	11.71 18.12 %

Eden Prairie NAUTICAL BOWLS

The following chart reflects sales, costs of goods, and certain operating expenses for the Eden Prairie NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurant for calendar year 2022.

Eden Prairie 2022 Sales and Certain Cost Information		
Gross Sales¹	\$ 676,078	-
Cost of Goods Sold²	\$ 309,282	45.75 %
Gross Profit³	\$ 360,183	53.28 %
Operating Expenses	-	-
Labor Costs⁴	\$ 135,678	20.07 %
Rent⁵	\$ 57,877	8.56 %
Royalty Fee Adjustment⁶	\$ 37,372	5.53 %
National Marketing Fund Contribution⁷	\$ 13,571	2.01 %
Marketing and Promotion⁸	\$ 3,381	0.50 %
Utilities⁹	\$ 7,921	1.17 %
Computer, Internet, and Phone¹⁰	\$ 1,737	0.26 %
Repairs and Maintenance¹¹	\$ 2,138	0.32 %
Store Operations¹²	\$ 12,275	1.82 %
Professional Fees¹³	\$ 2,903	0.43 %

Insurance ¹⁴	\$ 1,960	0.29%
Business License and Permits ¹⁵	\$ 798	0.12%
Merchant Account and Bank Fees ¹⁶	\$ 24,573	3.63%
Total Operating Expense¹⁷	\$ 611,466	90.44%
Operating Profit¹⁸	\$ 64,612	9.56%

The following chart reflects sales, costs of goods, and certain operating expenses for the Eden Prairie NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurant for calendar year 2022.

Note 1. “Gross Sales” means cash receipts from the sale of food and merchandise, net of customer refunds and sales tax.

Note 2. “Cost of Goods Sold” ~~is~~ includes the ~~sum~~ cost of beginning inventory ingredients and purchases, minus closing inventory. Inventory, and purchases include items needed to make bowls, packaging.

Note 3. “Gross Profit” means Gross Sales less Cost of Goods Sold.

Note 4. “Rent” includes rent, CAM charges and tenant’s portion of insurance and real estate taxes.

Note 5. “Crew Labor Costs” was calculated by dividing total labor costs (i.e., includes wages and payroll, payroll taxes, and benefit expense) by Gross Sales. Labor Costs includes labor expense taxes for managers and hourly workers but does not include manager or owner salary.

Note 5. “Rent” includes rent, CAM charges, and taxes.

Note 6. “Royalty Fee Adjustment” reflects the 6% Royalty Fee that franchisees pay to us under the franchise agreement. ~~The Minnetonka and Eden Prairie Restaurants pay us a 6% Royalty Fee.~~

Note 7. “National Marketing Fund Contribution” reflects the 2% National Marketing Fund contributions that franchisees pay to us under the franchise Agreement. The Minnetonka and Eden Prairie Restaurants make this contribution.

Note 8. “Marketing and Promotion” means costs paid to market and promote the restaurants in the local market.

Note 9. “Merchant Account and Bank Fees” means the total costs paid for fees associated with credit card processing and wire transfers.

Note 10. “Utilities” means the total costs paid for electricity, water, sewage, and other utilities.

Note 10. “Computer, Internet, and Phone” means costs paid for computer repairs or updates, internet service, and phone service.

Note 11. “Repairs and Maintenance” means costs paid for general upkeep, repairs, and maintenance.

Note 12. “Store Operations” means the total costs paid for restaurant and office supplies needed to perform the day-to-day operations, including cleaning supplies, smallwares, uniforms, and miscellaneous office supplies.

Note 11. “Utilities” means the total costs paid for electricity, water, sewage, and other utilities.

Note 12. “Professional Fees” means costs paid to third parties for professional services including costs for attorney services, accountant services, and other professional services that may exist.

~~Note 14. “Note 13. “Operating Supplies means cleaning supplies, office supplies, utensils, etc.~~

~~Note 14. “Repairs and Maintenance” means costs paid for general upkeep, repairs, and maintenance.~~

~~Note 15. “Business Insurance” means costs paid for insurance, including general liability insurance and workers’ compensation insurance.~~

~~Note 15. Note 16 “Computer and Internet” means costs paid for computer repairs or updates, internet service, and phone service.~~

~~Note 17. “Business License and Permits” means costs paid to municipalities for appropriate licenses and permits.~~

~~Note 16. “Merchant Account and Bank Fees” means the total costs paid for fees associated with credit card processing and wire transfers.~~

~~Note 17. “Total Operating Expense” is the sum of the listed operating expenses. It does not include any finance charges, including payment of principal or interests related to borrowed funds.~~

~~Note 18. “Operating Profit” is the difference between the Gross Profit less the Total Operating Expense.~~

~~Note 19. The Minnetonka NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant opened in 2018. The Eden Prairie NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant opened mid-year in 2020. Therefore, during the reported period, the restaurants had brand recognition in the local market and a customer base.~~

Gross Sales of Franchised NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants

~~As of December 31, 18. “Uniforms and Apparel” includes the cost of purchase uniforms and apparel for employees.~~

~~Some 2022, there were two franchised restaurants that had been operating the full 2022 calendar year. The following chart reflects the Gross Sales for the calendar year 2022 for the two NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised restaurants that operated for the full 2022 calendar year, which were located in Savage, Minnesota and Maple Grove, Minnesota.~~

Gross Sales¹ of NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchised Restaurants for 2022 Calendar Year²	
Franchise Location 1	\$630,870.30
Franchise Location 2	\$556,630.00

~~Note 1. “Gross Sales” means cash receipts from the sale of food and merchandise, net of customer refunds and sales tax.~~

~~Note 2. This information relates only to sales; you can draw no inferences with respect to the franchised restaurants’ profitability.~~

~~Note 3. Both franchised Restaurants opened in 2021. The above chart represents each Restaurants’ first full calendar year of operations.~~

~~While some outlets have earned the above amounts, you this amount. Your individual results may differ. There is no assurance that you will you’ll earn as much.~~

Written substantiation for the financial performance representation will be made available to you upon reasonable request.

Except for the information presented above, we do not make any representations about a franchisee’s future financial performance or the past financial performance of company-owned or franchised outlets. We also

do not authorize our employees or representatives to make any representations either orally or in writing. If you are purchasing an existing outlet, however, we may provide you with the actual records of that outlet. If you receive any other financial performance information or projections of your future income, you should report it to the franchisor's management by contacting ~~Bryant Amundson~~Peter Taunton, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC, ~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida 33137, ~~Bryantptaunton@nauticalbowls.com~~, the Federal Trade Commission, and the appropriate state regulatory agencies.

**ITEM 20
OUTLETS AND FRANCHISEE INFORMATION**

**TABLE NO. 1
SYSTEMWIDE OUTLET SUMMARY
FOR YEARS ~~2020~~2021 TO ~~2023~~2022**

Outlet Type	Year	Outlets at the Start of the Year	Outlets at End of Year	Net Change
Franchised	2021 <u>2020</u>	0	0 <u>4</u>	0 <u>+4</u>
	2022 <u>2021</u>	0 <u>4</u>	4 <u>28</u>	+4 <u>+24</u>
	2022 <u>2023</u>	4 <u>28</u>	29 <u>62</u>	+25 <u>+34</u>
Company-Owned	2021 <u>2020</u>	1 <u>2</u>	2 <u>0</u>	+1 <u>-2</u> ¹
	2022 <u>2021</u>	2 <u>0</u>	0	-2 <u>+0</u>
	2022 <u>2023</u>	0	0 <u>1</u>	0 <u>+1</u>
Total Outlets	2021 <u>2020</u>	1 <u>2</u>	2 <u>4</u>	+1 <u>+2</u>
	2022 <u>2021</u>	2 <u>4</u>	4 <u>28</u>	+2 <u>+24</u>
	2022 <u>2023</u>	4 <u>28</u>	29 <u>63</u>	+25 <u>+35</u>

Note 1. In 2021 two of our company-owned locations transitioned to franchised locations owned by two of our principals, Bryant and Rachel Amundson.

**TABLE NO. 2
TRANSFERS OF OUTLETS FROM FRANCHISEES TO NEW OWNERS
(OTHER THAN THE FRANCHISOR)
FOR YEARS ~~2020~~2021 TO ~~2022~~2023**

State	Year	Number of Transfers
Totals	2021 <u>2020</u>	0
	2021 <u>2022</u>	0 <u>1</u>
	2022 <u>2023</u>	1 <u>4</u>

TABLE NO. 3
STATUS OF FRANCHISED OUTLETS
FOR YEARS ~~2020~~2021 TO ~~2022~~2023

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Terminations	Non-Renewals	Reacquired by Franchisor	Ceased Operations - Other Reasons	Outlets at End of Year
Florida Arizona	2021 2020	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022 2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022 2023	0	2 3	0	0	0	0	2 3
Arkansas	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2022	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2023	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
California	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2022	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2023	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
Florida	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2022	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
	2023	<u>2</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>4</u>
Illinois	2021 2020	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
	2023	<u>2</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>4</u>
Indiana	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	2 0	0	0	0	0	2 0
	2023	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
Kansas	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2022	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2023	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
Michigan	2020 2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	2022	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	2023	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
Minnesota	2020 2021	0	2 4	0	0	0	0	0 4
	2021	<u>0</u>	<u>4</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>4</u>
	2022	4	15	0	0	0	0	19

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Terminations	Non-Renewals	Reacquired by Franchisor	Ceased Operations - Other Reasons	Outlets at End of Year
	<u>2023</u>	<u>19</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>27</u>
Missouri	2020 <u>2021</u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	<u>2022</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>New York</u>	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	<u>40</u>	0	0	0	0	<u>40</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
North Carolina	2020 <u>2021</u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	<u>2023</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
North Dakota	2020 <u>2021</u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	<u>2022</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>Pennsylvania</u>	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	<u>40</u>	0	0	0	0	<u>40</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
<u>South Carolina</u>	<u>2021</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	<u>2022</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
South Dakota	2020 <u>2021</u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	<u>2023</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
Texas	2020 <u>2021</u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	<u>2022</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>5</u>
<u>Utah</u>	2021	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2022	0	<u>40</u>	0	0	0	0	<u>40</u>
Totals	2020 <u>2023</u>	0	<u>02</u>	0	0	0	0	<u>02</u>
<u>Virginia</u>	<u>2021</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Terminations	Non-Renewals	Reacquired by Franchisor	Ceased Operations - Other Reasons	Outlets at End of Year
	<u>2022</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>2</u>
<u>Totals</u>	2021	0	4	0	0	0	0	4
	2022	4	25 <u>24</u>	0	0	0	0	29 <u>28</u>
	<u>2023</u>	<u>28</u>	<u>39</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>7</u>	<u>62</u>

TABLE NO. 4
STATUS OF COMPANY-OWNED OUTLETS
FOR YEARS ~~2020~~2021 TO ~~2022~~2023

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Outlets Reacquired from Franchisee	Outlets Closed	Outlets Sold to Franchisee	Outlets at End of Year
Minnesota	2020 2021	+2	+0	0	0	0 <u>2</u>	2 <u>0</u>
	2022 2021	2 <u>0</u>	0	0	0	0 <u>2</u>	0
	2022 2023	0	0 <u>1</u>	0	0	0	0 <u>1</u>
Totals	2020 2021	+2	+0	0	0	0 <u>2</u>	2 <u>0</u>
	2022 2021	2 <u>0</u>	0	0	0	0 <u>2</u>	0
	2022 2023	0	0 <u>1</u>	0	0	0	0 <u>1</u>

TABLE NO. 5
PROJECTED OPENINGS AS OF DECEMBER 31, ~~2022~~2023

State	Franchise Agreements Signed But Outlets Not Open	Projected New Franchised Outlets in Next Fiscal Year	Projected New Company-owned Outlets in Next Fiscal Year
Arizona	<u>0</u> <u>7</u>	3	0
<u>California</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
<u>Connecticut</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
<u>Washington, DC</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
Florida	<u>4</u> <u>7</u>	<u>7</u> <u>4</u>	0
<u>Indiana</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
Kansas	<u>0</u> <u>1</u>	<u>4</u> <u>0</u>	0
<u>Massachusetts</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
<u>Maryland</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
Michigan	<u>2</u> <u>1</u>	<u>6</u> <u>0</u>	0
Minnesota	<u>1</u> <u>1</u>	<u>1</u> <u>5</u> <u>2</u>	0
<u>Missouri</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>
North Carolina	<u>0</u> <u>3</u>	<u>3</u> <u>1</u>	0

State	Franchise Agreements Signed But Outlets Not Open	Projected New Franchised Outlets in Next Fiscal Year	Projected New Company-owned Outlets in Next Fiscal Year
North Dakota New York	<u>0</u> ₁	<u>3</u> ₁	0
Ohio	0	3	0
Pennsylvania	<u>1</u> ₄	<u>1</u> ₄	0
South Carolina	<u>0</u> ₄	<u>3</u> ₀	0
<u>South Dakota</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
<u>Tennessee</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Texas	<u>0</u> ₆	3	0
Utah	<u>0</u> ₂	<u>3</u> ₁	0
Virginia	<u>0</u> ₂	<u>3</u> ₁	<u>0</u> ₀
<u>Wisconsin</u>	<u>4</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Totals	<u>1</u>₈<u>5</u>₈	<u>7</u>₀<u>2</u>₄	0

Attached to this disclosure document as Exhibit C is a list of our current franchisees and a list of our former franchisees, if any, as of December 31, ~~2022~~2023. Also attached as Exhibit C is a list of the name, city and state, and current business telephone number or e-mail address of every franchisee who has had an outlet terminated, canceled, or not renewed by us or who otherwise voluntarily or involuntarily ceased to do business under their agreements as of December 31, ~~2022~~2023, or who has not communicated with us within 10 weeks of the date of this disclosure document.

If you buy this franchise, your contact information may be disclosed to other buyers when you leave the franchise system.

In some instances, current and former franchisees sign provisions restricting their ability to speak openly about their experience with NAUTICAL BOWLS. You may wish to speak with current and former franchisees, but be aware that not all such franchisees will be able to communicate with you.

ITEM 21 FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Attached to this disclosure document as Exhibit A, are our audited balance sheets as of December 31, ~~2022~~2023, December 31, ~~2022~~2021, and December 31, ~~2020~~2021, and the related statements of operations, changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the fiscal years then-ended, and the related notes.

Our fiscal year ends December 31. ~~We have not been in business for three years or more and, therefore, cannot include all the financial statements required by this Item.~~

ITEM 22 CONTRACTS

Attached to this disclosure document are the following contracts:

Exhibit B –Franchise Agreement

- Attachment A – Glossary of Additional Terms
- Attachment B - Key Terms
- Attachment C – Entity Information
- Attachment D-1 – Guaranty and Personal Undertaking
- Attachment D-2 – Confidentiality and Non-Compete Agreement

Attachment E – ACH Authorization
Attachment F – Lease Rider
Attachment G – Franchisee Questionnaire
Attachment H – Three Pack Addendum

Exhibit E –General Release Example

ITEM 23
RECEIPTS

Attached as Exhibit J are detachable duplicate Receipts. Please sign and date both copies of the Receipt. Keep one signed copy of the Receipt for your file and return to us the other signed copy of the Receipt. The Receipt contains the names of our franchise sellers or brokers.

STATE APPENDIX TO THE FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

FOR THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

The registration of this franchise offering by the California Department of Financial Protection and Innovation does not constitute approval, recommendation, or endorsement by the commissioner.

Our website has not been reviewed or approved by the California Department of Financial Protection and Innovation. -Any complaints concerning the content of this website may be directed to the California Department of Financial Protection and Innovation at www.dfpi.ca.gov.

Item 3 is supplemented by the following:

Neither we, nor any person or franchise broker disclosed in Item 2 of the disclosure document is subject to any currently effective order of any national securities association or national securities exchange, as defined in the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C.A. 78a et seq., suspending or expelling these persons from membership in this association or exchange.

Item 17 is supplemented by the following:

California Business and Professions Code Sections 20000 through 20043 provide rights to you concerning termination, transfer, or non-renewal of a franchise. -If the Franchise Agreement contains a provision that is inconsistent with the law, the law will control.

The Franchise Agreement provides for termination upon bankruptcy. -This provision may not be enforceable under federal bankruptcy law (11 U.S.C.A. Sec 101 et seq.).

The Franchise Agreement contains a covenant not to compete which extends beyond the termination of the franchise. -This provision may not be enforceable under California law.

The Franchise Agreement requires application of the law of Minnesota. - This provision may not be enforceable under California law.

The Franchise Agreement and Development Agreement contain a provision requiring you to waive your right to punitive or exemplary damages against the franchisor or any of its representatives, limiting your recovery to actual damages. Under California Corporations Code section 31512, these provisions are not enforceable in California for any claims you may have under the California Franchise Investment Law.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including, fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by any franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed with the franchise.

The franchisor will not enforce in California the prohibition on franchisee employing or soliciting for employment any current or former employee of franchisor or its affiliates (also known as a no-poach/non-solicitation provision) in section 15.1 of the Franchise Agreement that is disclosed in Item 17, row q.

The Department has determined that the franchisor has not demonstrated it is adequately capitalized and/or that the franchisor must rely on franchise fees to fund operations. - The Commissioner has imposed a requirement for the franchisor to maintain a surety bond in the amount of \$300,000 with SureTec Insurance Company, telephone number (512) 732-0099, during the registration period. - The surety bond is available for you to recover your damages in the event the franchisor does not fulfill its obligations to you to open your franchised business. - We will provide you with a copy of the surety bond upon request.

THE CALIFORNIA FRANCHISE INVESTMENT LAW REQUIRES THAT A COPY OF ALL PROPOSED AGREEMENTS RELATING TO THE SALE OF THE FRANCHISE BE DELIVERED TOGETHER WITH THE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT.

FOR THE STATE OF ILLINOIS

Item 17 is supplemented by the following:

Illinois law governs the Franchise Agreement and Store Development Agreement.

In conformance with Section 4 of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act, any provision in a franchise agreement that designates jurisdiction and venue in a forum outside of the State of Illinois is void. However, a franchise agreement may provide for arbitration to take place outside of Illinois.

Your rights upon Termination and Non-Renewal are set forth in sections 19 and 20 of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act.

In conformance with section 41 of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act, any condition, stipulation or provision purporting to bind any person acquiring any franchise to waive compliance with the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act or any other law of Illinois is void.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

[The Illinois Attorney General's Office has required us to obtain a surety bond due to our financial condition.](#)

FOR THE STATE OF MARYLAND

The following risk factors included as a Special Factor for this Franchisor:

Pricing: We have the right to establish maximum, minimum, or other retail pricing requirements to the extent permitted by law. -This pricing control may reduce anticipated profit of your franchise business.

Guarantee: As a condition of our consent to allow you to transfer your franchise to a third party, we may require you to guarantee the performance of that third party

Item 5 of the Disclosure Document is supplemented by the following:

Based upon the franchisor's financial condition, the Maryland Securities Commissioner has required a financial assurance. Therefore, a Surety Bond has been obtained by Franchisor to assure its financial capability; the Bond is on file with the Office of the Attorney General, Securities Division.

Item 17 of the Disclosure Document is supplemented by the following:

- (a) Any release or waiver provision contained in the Franchise Agreement or any release required as a condition of the sale, renewal, and/or assignment/transfer of the franchise shall not apply to any liability incurred under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law (the "Maryland Franchise Law").
- (b) Any claims arising under the Maryland Franchise Law must be brought within three years after the grant of the franchise;
- (c) Subject to your arbitration obligations, any provision in the Franchise Agreement requiring litigation in a forum outside the State of Maryland will not limit any rights you may have under the Maryland Franchise Law to bring suit in the State of Maryland.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement

made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

Unopened Franchise: The franchisor has signed a significant number of franchise agreements to franchisees who have not opened their outlets. If other franchisees have experienced this problem, you may experience delays in getting your own outlet opened.

FOR THE STATE OF MINNESOTA

Item 13 of the disclosure document is supplemented by the following:

The franchisor will protect the franchisee's rights to use the trademarks, service marks, trade names, logotypes or other commercial symbols ("Marks") or indemnify the franchisee from any loss, costs or expenses arising out of any claim, suit or demand regarding the use of the name.

As required by the Minnesota Franchise Act, Minn. Stat. Sec. 80C.12(g), we will reimburse you for any costs incurred that you incur in the defense of your right to use the Marks, so long as you were using the Marks in the manner that we authorized, and so long as we are timely notified of the claim and given the right to manage the defense of the claim including the right to compromise, settle or otherwise resolve the claim, and to determine whether to appeal a final determination of the claim.

Item 17 of the disclosure document is supplemented by the following:

With respect to franchises governed by Minnesota law, we will comply with Minn. Stat. Sec. 80C.14, Subds. 3, 4 and 5 which require, except in certain specified cases, that (1) a franchisee be given 90 days' notice of termination (with 60 days to cure) and 180 days' notice for non-renewal of the Agreement and (2) that consent to the transfer of the franchise will not be unreasonably withheld.

To the extent that any condition, stipulation, or provision contained in the Franchise Agreement (including any choice of law provision) purports to require any person who, at the time of acquiring a franchise is a resident of Minnesota, or, in the case of a partnership or corporation, organized or incorporated under the laws of Minnesota, or purporting to bind a person acquiring any franchise to be operated in Minnesota, to waive compliance with the Minnesota Franchises Law, such condition, stipulation, or provision may be void and unenforceable under the non-waiver provision of the Minnesota Franchises Law.

Minnesota Statutes, Section 80C.21 and Minnesota Rule 2860.4400(J) prohibit the franchisor from requiring litigation to be conducted outside Minnesota, requiring waiver of a jury trial, or requiring the franchisee to consent to liquidated damages, termination penalties or judgment notes. In addition, nothing in the Franchise Disclosure Document or agreement(s) can abrogate or reduce any of franchisee's rights as provided for in Minnesota Statutes, Chapter 80C, or franchisee's rights to any procedure, forum, or remedies provided for by the laws of the jurisdiction.

Minnesota Rule 2860.4400(D) prohibits a franchisor from requiring a franchisee to assent to a general release.

The Limitations of Claims section must comply with Minnesota Statutes, Section 80C.17, Subd. 5.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

FOR THE STATE OF NEW YORK

1. The following information is added to the cover page of the Franchise Disclosure Document:

INFORMATION COMPARING FRANCHISORS IS AVAILABLE. CALL THE STATE ADMINISTRATORS LISTED IN EXHIBIT A OR YOUR PUBLIC LIBRARY FOR SOURCES OF INFORMATION. REGISTRATION OF THIS FRANCHISE BY NEW YORK STATE DOES NOT MEAN THAT NEW YORK STATE RECOMMENDS IT OR HAS VERIFIED THE INFORMATION IN THIS FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT. IF YOU LEARN THAT ANYTHING IN THE FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT IS UNTRUE, CONTACT THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LAW, BUREAU OF INVESTOR PROTECTION AND SECURITIES, 120 BROADWAY, 23RD FLOOR, NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10271. THE FRANCHISOR MAY, IF IT CHOOSES, NEGOTIATE WITH YOU ABOUT ITEMS COVERED IN THE FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT. HOWEVER, THE FRANCHISOR CANNOT USE THE NEGOTIATING PROCESS TO PREVAIL UPON A PROSPECTIVE FRANCHISEE TO ACCEPT TERMS WHICH ARE LESS FAVORABLE THAN THOSE SET FORTH IN THIS FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT.

2. The following is added to the end of Item 3:

Except as provided above, with regard to the franchisor, its predecessor, a person identified in Item 2, or an affiliate offering franchises under the franchisor's principal trademark:

- A. No such party has an administrative, criminal or civil action pending against that person alleging: a felony; a violation of a franchise, antitrust or securities law; fraud, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property; unfair or deceptive practices or comparable civil or misdemeanor allegations.
- B. No such party has pending actions, other than routine litigation incidental to the business, which are significant in the context of the number of franchisees and the size, nature or financial condition of the franchise system or its business operations.
- C. No such party has been convicted of a felony or pleaded nolo contendere to a felony charge or, within the 10 year period immediately preceding the application for registration, has been convicted of or pleaded nolo contendere to a misdemeanor charge or has been the subject of a civil action alleging: violation of a franchise, antifraud or securities law; fraud, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion or misappropriation of property, or unfair or deceptive practices or comparable allegations.
- D. No such party is subject to a currently effective injunctive or restrictive order or decree relating to the franchise, or under a federal, State or Canadian franchise, securities, antitrust, trade regulation or trade practice law, resulting from a concluded or pending action or proceeding brought by a public agency; or is subject to any currently effective order or any national securities association or national securities exchange, as defined in the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, suspending or expelling such person from membership in such association or exchange; or is subject to a currently effective injunctive or restrictive order relating to any other business activity as a result of an action brought by a public agency or department, including, without limitation, actions affecting a license as a real estate broker or sales agent.

3. The following is added to the end of the "Summary" sections of Item 17(c), titled "Requirements for franchisee to renew or extend," and Item 17 (m), entitled "Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer".

However, to the extent required by applicable law, all rights you enjoy and any causes of action arising in your favor from the provisions of Article 33 of the General Business Law of the State of New York and the regulations issued thereunder shall remain in force; it being the intent of this

proviso that the non-waiver provisions of General Business Law Sections 687.4 and 687.5 be satisfied.

4. The following language replaces the “Summary” section of Item 17(d), titled “Termination by franchisee”.

You may terminate the agreement on any grounds available by law.

5. The following is added to the end of the “Summary” sections of Item 17(v), titled “Choice of forum”, and Item 17(w), titled “Choice of law”.

The foregoing choice of law should not be considered a waiver of any right conferred upon the franchisor or upon the franchisee by Article 33 of the General Business Law of the State of New York.

FOR THE STATE OF NORTH DAKOTA

1. The Securities Commissioner for the State of North Dakota has determined that the following types of provisions are deemed to be contrary to North Dakota law:

- (a) A provision requiring a North Dakota franchisee to sign a general release upon renewal of the Franchise Agreement;
- (b) A provision requiring a North Dakota franchisee to consent to termination penalties or liquidated damages;
- (c) A provision requiring a North Dakota franchisee to consent to the jurisdiction of courts outside the state of North Dakota;
- (d) A provision restricting the time in which a North Dakota franchisee may make a claim to less than the applicable North Dakota statute of limitations;
- (e) A provision calling for the waiver by a North Dakota franchisee of the right to trial by jury;
- (f) A provision requiring a North Dakota franchisee to consent to a waiver of exemplary and punitive damages.

Any and all provisions in the Franchise Agreement that are in violation of Paragraphs 1 (a-f) are deleted.

2. North Dakota Century Code Section 9-08-06 subjects covenants not to compete to the provisions of that statute. The covenants not to compete contained within the Franchise Agreement are subject to Section 9-08-06 and may be unenforceable under North Dakota law.

3. The site of any mediation or arbitration of the parties’ disputes shall be at a site mutually agreeable to all parties. If all parties cannot agree upon a location, the arbitration or mediation shall be Fargo, North Dakota.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

FOR THE STATE OF RHODE ISLAND

Section 19-28.1-14 of the Rhode Island Franchise Act (“Act”) provides that “A provision in a Franchise Agreement restricting jurisdiction or venue to a forum outside this state or requiring application of the laws of another state is void with respect to a claim otherwise enforceable under this Act.”

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any

applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

FOR THE COMMONWEALTH OF VIRGINIA

1. Item 5 of the disclosure document is supplemented by the following:

“The Virginia State Corporation Commission’s Division of Securities and Retail Franchising requires us to defer payment of the initial franchise fee and other initial payments owed by franchisees to the franchisor until the franchisor has completed its pre-opening obligations under the franchise agreement.

2. In recognition of the restrictions contained in Section 13.1-564 of the Virginia Retail Franchising Act, Item 17.h. of the disclosure document is supplemented by the following:

“Under Section 13.1-564 of the Virginia Retail Franchising Act, it is unlawful for a franchisor to cancel a franchise without reasonable cause. If any ground for default or termination stated in the Franchise Agreement does not constitute “reasonable cause”, as that term may be defined in the Virginia Retail Franchising Act or the laws of Virginia, that provision may not be enforceable.”

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

FOR THE STATE OF WISCONSIN

Item 17 of the disclosure document is supplemented by the following:

For franchisees subject to the Wisconsin Fair Dealership Law, Ch. 135, Stats., provisions in the Fair Dealership Law supersede any inconsistent provisions of the Franchise Agreement or a related contract.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

FOR THE STATE OF WASHINGTON

The following is added to the Disclosure Document for Washington residents as a Special Risk:

Use of Franchise Brokers. The franchisor may use the services of franchise brokers to assist it in selling franchises. A franchise broker represents that franchisor and is paid a fee for referring prospects to the franchisor and/or selling the franchise. Do not rely only on the information provided by a franchise broker about a franchise. Do your own investigation by contacting the franchisor’s current and former franchisees to ask them about their experience with the franchisor.

The following is added to the Disclosure Document for Washington residents:

Item 17, Additional Disclosures

~~RCW § 19.100.180 and court decisions may supersede the Franchise Agreement or Development Agreement in your relationship with us, including in the areas of termination and renewal of your Franchise Agreement or Development Agreement.~~

In the event of a conflict ~~between the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act and the law chosen in the Franchise Agreement or Development Agreement~~ of laws, the provisions of the

Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, Chapter 19.100 RCW, will prevail.

RCW 19.100.180 may supersede the franchise agreement in your relationship with the franchisor including the areas of termination and renewal of your franchise. There may also be court decisions which may supersede the franchise agreement in your relationship with the franchisor including the areas of termination and renewal of your franchise.

A release or waiver of rights executed by a franchisee will not include rights under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, except when executed pursuant to a negotiated settlement after the agreement is in effect, and where the parties are represented by independent counsel. Provisions such as those which unreasonably restrict or limit the statute of limitations period for claims under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, or rights or remedies under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, such as a right to a jury trial, may not be enforceable in Washington.

Transfer fees are collectable to the extent that they reflect our reasonable estimated or actual costs in effecting a transfer and are subject to state law.

In any arbitration or mediation involving a franchise purchased in Washington, the arbitration or mediation site shall be either in the state of Washington, or in a place mutually agreed upon at the time of the arbitration, ~~or as determined by the arbitrator or mediation, or as determined by the arbitrator or mediator at the time of arbitration or mediation.~~ In addition, if litigation is not precluded by the franchise agreement, a franchisee may bring an action or proceeding arising out of or in connection with the sale of franchises, or a violation of the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, in Washington.

Pursuant to RCW 49.62.020, a noncompetition covenant is void and unenforceable against an employee, including an employee of a franchisee, unless the employee's earnings from the party seeking enforcement, when annualized, exceed \$100,000 per year (an amount that will be adjusted annually for inflation). In addition, a noncompetition covenant is void and unenforceable against an independent contractor of a franchisee under RCW 49.62.030 unless the independent contractor's earnings from the party seeking enforcement, when annualized, exceed \$250,000 per year (an amount that will be adjusted annually for inflation). As a result, any provisions contained in the franchise agreement or elsewhere that conflict with these limitations are void and unenforceable in Washington.

RCW 49.62.060 prohibits a franchisor from restricting, restraining, or prohibiting a franchisee from (i) soliciting or hiring any employee of a franchisee of the same franchisor or (ii) soliciting or hiring any employee of the franchisor. As a result, any such provisions contained in the franchise agreement or elsewhere are void and enforceable in Washington.

Except as noted above, execution of a general release for any other purpose is subject to state law.

Franchisee may terminate the Franchise Agreement or the Development Agreement under any grounds permitted by law.

Any mediation involving a franchise purchased in Washington is subject to state law.

No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

A surety bond in the amount of \$100,000 has been obtained by the Franchisor. The Washington Securities Division has made the issuance of the franchisor's permit contingent upon the Franchisor maintaining surety bond coverage acceptable to the Administrator until (a) all Washington franchisees have (i) receiving initial training that they are entitled to under the franchise agreement or offering circular, and (ii) are open for business; or (iii) the Administrator issues written authorization to the contrary.

EXHIBIT A
NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

AS OF AND FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2023, 2022, AND 2021

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Pages
Independent Auditor's Report	1 - 2
Financial Statements	
Balance Sheets	3
Statement of Operations and Members' Deficit	4
Statement of Cash flows	5
Notes to Financial Statements	6 – 11

DNJ & ASSOCIATES

Certified Public Accountants
601 Las Tunas Drive, #108,
Arcadia, CA 91007
310-989-8507
www.dnjassociates.com

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Members
NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Minnetonka, MN

Opinion

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (the "Company") (a Texas limited liability company), which comprise the balance sheet as of December 31, 2023, and the related statements of operations and members' deficit, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes to financial statements.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2023, and the results of its operations and cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Basis of Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are required to be independent of the Company and to meet our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to our audit. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Prior Period Financial Statements

The financial statements of Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC as of December 31, 2022 and 2021 were audited by other auditors whose report dated March 17, 2023 expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements.

Responsibility of Management for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; and for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is required to evaluate whether there are conditions or events, considered in the aggregate, that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the date that the financial statements are available to be issued.

Independent Auditor's Report (Continued)

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance but is not absolute assurance and therefore is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control. Misstatements are considered material if there is a substantial likelihood that, individually or in the aggregate, they would influence the judgement made by a reasonable user based on the financial statements.

In performing an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, we:

- Exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit.
- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, and design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks. Such procedures include examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control. Accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluate the overall presentation of the financial statements.
- Conclude whether, in our judgment, there are conditions or events, considered in the aggregate, that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.

We are required to communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit, significant audit findings, and certain internal control related matters that we identified during the audit.

DNJ & ASSOCIATES

Arcadia, California
February 6, 2024

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Balance Sheets
December 31, 2023, 2022 and 2021

	Assets		
	2023	2022	2021
Current Assets			
Cash	\$ 121,271	\$ 308,705	\$ 288,857
Accounts receivable, net of allowance of \$0	8,666	28,602	206,027
Franchise fees receivable	-	99,500	-
Accounts receivable-related parties, net of allowance of \$0	504,524	441,681	-
Deferred commissions, current portion	75,550	20,017	26,450
Other current assets	23,930	-	35,020
Total current assets	733,941	898,505	556,354
Deferred commissions, net of current portion	3,052,031	1,959,619	229,721
Deferred income taxes	911,669	839,120	-
Property and equipment, net	113,586	-	-
Total Assets	\$ 4,811,227	\$ 3,697,244	\$ 786,075
	Liabilities and Members' Deficit		
Current Liabilities			
Accounts payable	\$ 158,185	\$ 72,190	\$ 136,392
Accrued interest payable	21,658	-	-
Accrued income taxes	-	57,187	-
Commissions payable	-	32,500	-
Customer deposits	-	-	2,432
Accounts payable-related party	487,083	-	-
Deferred franchise fees, current portion	183,243	71,267	96,500
Total current liabilities	850,169	233,144	235,324
Deferred franchise fees, net of current portion	5,715,689	3,902,236	834,833
Total liabilities	6,565,858	4,135,380	1,070,157
Members' Deficit	(1,754,631)	(438,136)	(284,082)
Total Liabilities and Members' Deficit	\$ 4,811,227	\$ 3,697,244	\$ 786,075

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Statements of Operations and Members' Deficit
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022 and 2021

	<u>2023</u>	<u>2022</u>	<u>2021</u>
Revenues			
Sales	\$ 45,989	\$ 94,273	\$ 260,616
Franchise fee income	174,541	5,931	35,667
Royalty income	484,747	218,188	17,978
Marketing fund income	335,155	114,027	5,705
Rebate income	15,525	500,538	-
Other revenue	-	-	14,565
Total revenues	<u>1,055,957</u>	<u>932,957</u>	<u>334,531</u>
Cost of revenues	<u>-</u>	<u>84,020</u>	<u>284,302</u>
Gross profit	<u>1,055,957</u>	<u>848,937</u>	<u>50,229</u>
Operating expenses:			
Sales and marketing	875,612	399,280	146,651
General and administrative	1,565,040	1,152,334	183,722
Total operating expenses	<u>2,440,652</u>	<u>1,551,614</u>	<u>330,373</u>
Loss from operations	(1,384,695)	(702,677)	(280,144)
Other income	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>15</u>
Loss before income tax benefit	(1,384,695)	(702,677)	(280,129)
Income tax benefit	<u>(68,200)</u>	<u>(654,993)</u>	<u>-</u>
Net loss	(1,316,495)	(47,684)	(280,129)
Members' deficit-beginning of period	(438,136)	(284,082)	(3,953)
Members' distributions	<u>-</u>	<u>(106,370)</u>	<u>-</u>
Members' deficit-end of period	<u>\$ (1,754,631)</u>	<u>\$ (438,136)</u>	<u>\$ (284,082)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Statements of Cash Flows
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

	<u>2023</u>	<u>2022</u>	<u>2021</u>
Cash flows from operating activities			
Net loss	\$ (1,316,495)	\$ (47,684)	\$ (280,129)
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities			
Depreciation and amortization expense	3,672	-	-
Deferred income taxes	(72,549)	(839,120)	-
Changes in operating assets and liabilities			
Accounts receivable	19,936	177,425	(206,027)
Franchise fees receivable	99,500	(99,500)	-
Accounts receivable-related parties	(62,843)	(441,681)	-
Other current assets	(23,930)	35,020	(35,020)
Deferred commissions	(1,147,945)	(1,723,465)	(256,171)
Accounts payable	85,995	(64,202)	136,392
Accrued interest payable	21,658	-	-
Accrued income taxes	(57,187)	57,187	-
Commissions payable	(32,500)	32,500	-
Customer deposits	-	(2,432)	2,432
Accounts payable-related party	487,083	-	-
Deferred franchise fees	1,925,429	3,042,170	931,333
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	<u>(70,176)</u>	<u>126,218</u>	<u>292,810</u>
Cash flows from investing activities			
Acquisitions of property and equipment	<u>(117,258)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(117,258)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
Cash flows from financing activities			
Members' distributions	<u>-</u>	<u>(106,370)</u>	<u>(3,953)</u>
Net cash used in financing activities	<u>-</u>	<u>(106,370)</u>	<u>(3,953)</u>
Net increase (decrease) in cash	(187,434)	19,848	288,857
Cash, beginning of period	<u>308,705</u>	<u>288,857</u>	<u>-</u>
Cash, end of period	<u>\$ 121,271</u>	<u>\$ 308,705</u>	<u>\$ 288,857</u>
Supplementary disclosures of cash flow information			
Cash paid during the period for			
Interest	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
Income taxes	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements .

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

1. Nature of Organization

Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (the “Company”), was formed on September 25, 2020 (date of inception) under the laws of the state of Texas. The Company’s operations commenced in 2021. The Company sells franchises for Nautical Bowls restaurants in the United States. The Company is a healthy, fast-casual restaurant concept that specializes in superfood bowls. During 2023, the Company sold 31 franchise agreements for 67 locations. 60 locations are operating as of December 31, 2023.

Pursuant to member agreement, the initial members were obligated to make capital contributions of \$1 per membership unit, totaling \$100 in initial capital contributions from all members. The term of the Company shall be perpetual existence unless the Company is dissolved in accordance with the provision of its member agreement.

Net income and losses will be allocated to the members primarily in proportion to their ownership interest. The operating agreement provides that no member shall be personally liable for any debt, obligation or liability of the Company, whether that liability or obligation arises in contract, tort, or otherwise, except as required by law.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Accounting and Financial Statement Presentation

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“US GAAP”).

Fiscal Year

The Company’s fiscal year is December 31.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with US GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the financial statements as well as related disclosures. On an ongoing basis, the Company evaluates its estimates and assumptions based on historical experience and various other factors that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from these estimates.

Concentrations

The Company holds cash and cash equivalents at times may exceed federal insurance limits; however, the Company does not anticipate any losses related to this balance.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid debt instruments purchased with original maturities of three months or less to be cash equivalents. There were no cash equivalents at December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021, respectively.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Accounts Receivable and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts

Accounts receivable includes uncollateralized receivables from the Company's franchisees, due in the normal course of business which include royalties, marketing fees, web development fees and supplies. Interest does not accrue on delinquent balances.

The carrying amount of accounts receivable is reduced by an allowance that reflects management's best estimate of amounts that will not be collected. At December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021, management believes all amounts will be collected, thus an allowance for doubtful accounts is not considered necessary.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives ranging from seven years to fifteen years for all categories of depreciable assets. Leasehold improvements are stated at cost and depreciation is computed on the straight-line method over the shorter of the lease term or the estimated lives of the assets. Software is stated at cost and is amortized on the straight-line method over the estimated lives ranging from two to five years. Property and equipment costing more than \$1,000 are capitalized.

The cost and accumulated depreciation of assets sold or retired are removed from the respective accounts and any gain or loss is included in earnings. Maintenance and repairs are expensed currently while major renewals and betterments are capitalized.

Long-lived assets of the Company are reviewed when circumstances warrant as to whether their carrying value has become impaired. Management considers assets to be impaired if the carrying value exceeds the future projected cash flows from related operations. Management also re-evaluates the periods of depreciation to determine whether subsequent events and circumstances warrant revised estimates of useful lives. During the period ended December 31, 2023, there was no impairment losses recognized on long-lived assets.

Revenue Recognition

ASU 2014-09 requires entities to assess the products or services promised in contracts with customers at contract inception to determine the appropriate amount at which to record revenue which is referred to as a performance obligation. Revenue is recognized when control of the promised products or services is transferred to customers at an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for the products or services.

Revenue from contracts with customers is recognized using the following five steps:

- Identify the contract(s) with a customer;
- Identify the performance obligations in the contract;
- Determine the transaction price;
- Allocate the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract; and
- Recognize revenue when (or as) the Company satisfies a performance obligation.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

In accordance with ASC 2014-09, franchise fees are recognized as deferred revenue at the time a franchise agreement is executed or when a location commences operations. The deferred revenue is then recognized as revenue pro-rata over the term of the agreement. For area development agreements, the development fees are recognized as deferred revenue at the time an area development agreement is executed. The deferred revenue is recognized pro-rata over the term of the agreement or when the required number of franchises in the area development agreement are satisfied, whichever occurs earlier.

Deferred commissions for sales of franchises are recorded at the time of sale and recognized as commission expense over the term of the franchise agreement.

Advertising

The Company expenses advertising costs as incurred. Advertising expenses are included in sales and marketing expenses for the years ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021 amounted to approximately \$877,000, \$399,000, and \$100,000, respectively.

Income Taxes

The Company is a limited liability company but has elected to be taxed as a corporation. The Company accounts for income taxes under ASC 740, *Income Taxes*. This statement requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the future consequences of events that have been recognized in the Company's financial statements or tax returns. The Company measures tax assets and liabilities using the enacted tax rates. The Company provides a valuation allowance against net deferred tax assets unless, based upon the available evidence, it is more likely than not that the deferred tax assets will be realized.

As of December 31, 2023, the Company's returns are subject to examination by federal and state taxing authorities, generally for three years and four years, respectively, after they are filed.

3. Property and Equipment

As of December 31, 2023, property and equipment consisted of the following:

Furniture and fixtures	\$ 13,575
Leasehold improvement	103,683
Toal	117,258
Less accumulated depreciation	(3,672)
Property and equipment, net	\$ 113,586

4. Franchising

The Company executes franchise agreements as outlined under the Company's Franchise Disclosure Document ("FDD") that sets the terms of its arrangement with each franchisee as follows:

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

4. Franchising (Continued)

Franchise Agreements

The franchise agreements require the franchisees to pay a non-refundable franchise fee of \$39,500 for the first restaurant or \$99,500 for three restaurants. The franchise agreement grants the franchisees an agreed-upon, non-exclusive, site selection area within which the restaurant will be established. Franchise agreements are for terms of the earlier of 10 years after a restaurant opens for business, or 11 years after the effective date of the franchise agreement. Agreements may be renewed for two additional consecutive five-year terms. The franchise agreements are non-cancellable by the franchisee, and cancellable for cause, as defined in the agreement, by the Company.

As of the date of these financial statements, there are 114 franchise agreements executed or initial franchise fees earned.

The Company plans to recognize revenue and the associated direct costs relative to the franchise agreements as each of the restaurants under the agreements are opened. The Company is not required to contribute capital as part of these agreements.

Agreement Terms and Continuing Fees

Upon executing a franchise agreement (herein after referred to as the “Agreement”), the Company agrees to provide certain services to the franchisee, including assistance with training, store opening, pre-opening consultation advice, maintenance of a central website, and other ongoing assistance.

Continuing fees for each franchised location are comprised of weekly royalty fees based on 6% of each restaurant’s weekly gross revenue, monthly technology fees ranging from \$250 per month to \$3,000 per calendar year (limitations increasing 10% per calendar year) for the cost the development and use of online and communications technologies, and various non-recurring or per diem fees per the Agreement such as training and administrative fees, transfer fees, inspection and testing fees, relocation fees, and other (as defined in the Agreement). Renewal fees of \$2,500 are collected upon expiration of the Agreements, which have terms of 10 or 11 years (see above) with two additional five-year renewal options. Renewal approval is dependent upon certain conditions as defined in the Agreement.

The Company also receives brand development/marketing contributions from its franchisees. These contributions are a contractual obligation of the franchisee of up to 2% of the franchisee’s gross revenue. The purpose of the fund is to develop marketing and advertising programs that promote the Company’s brand and thus benefit franchisees. Expenditures from the fund may include creative development services, market research, advertising agency fees, local and regional promotional activities, executing direct mail advertising, updating and hosting the website and other expenditures as defined by the Agreement. The Company may reimburse itself from the fund for expenditures related to the cost of personnel and other administrative and overhead costs associated with providing the services as described in the Agreement. Any unused funds unapplied in the current year will be applied towards future years.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

5. Commitments and Contingencies

Legal

From time to time, the Company is party to legal actions arising out of the ordinary course of business. The Company does not believe that these legal actions will have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

6. Related Party Transactions

Accounts receivable-related parties

The Company has accounts receivable from related party totaling \$504,524 and \$441,681 for the years ended December 31, 2023, and 2022, respectively. Certain stakeholders of the Company are members of the related parties. The Company believed this balance due is fully collectible and will be paid within the next twelve months thus it is being classified as a current asset.

Accounts payable-related parties

The stockholder of the Company made advances totaling \$487,083 during the year ended December 31, 2023 for working capital purposes. The advance is due on demand, bearing interest at 6.013% per annum. Accrued interest payable amount to \$21,658. The advance is classified within accounts payable-related parties in the accompanying balance sheets as of December 31, 2023.

7. Income Taxes

The provision for income taxes consisted of the following:

	<u>2023</u>	<u>2022</u>	<u>2021</u>
Current			
Federal	\$ 4,650	\$ 120,340	\$ -
State	(301)	63,787	-
Change in deferred tax	(72,549)	(839,120)	-
Total deferred tax assets	<u>\$ (68,200)</u>	<u>\$ (654,993)</u>	<u>-</u>

The tax effects of temporary differences between financial statements and tax reporting give rise to deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities are presented below:

	<u>2023</u>	<u>2022</u>	<u>2021</u>
Deferred tax assets:			
Changes in prepaids	\$ 1,593,522	\$ 1,103,909	\$ -
Other	164,855	-	-
Total deferred tax assets	<u>\$ 1,758,377</u>	<u>\$ 1,103,909</u>	<u>-</u>
Deferred tax liabilities:			
Changes in accruals	\$ (844,649)	\$ (253,872)	-
Property and equipment	(2,060)	(10,917)	-
Total deferred tax liabilities	<u>\$ (846,708)</u>	<u>\$ (264,789)</u>	<u>-</u>
Net deferred tax assets	<u>\$ 911,669</u>	<u>\$ 839,120</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Notes to Financial Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2023, 2022, and 2021

8. Income Taxes (Continued)

The Company's provision for income taxes differs from applying the statutory U.S. federal income tax rate to income before income taxes. The primary differences result from providing for state income taxes and from deducting certain expenses for financial statement purposes but not for federal income tax purposes.

9. Subsequent Events

The Company has evaluated events through February 6, 2024, to assess the need for additional recognition or disclosure in these financial statements. Based upon this evaluation, it was determined that no events occurred that require recognition or additional disclosure in these financial statements.

EXHIBIT B
NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

FRANCHISE AGREEMENT



**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

SUMMARY PAGE

EFFECTIVE DATE: _____

FRANCHISEE(S): _____

ADDRESS FOR NOTICES: _____

KEY PERSON: _____

Telephone Number: _____

Email Address: _____

SITE SELECTION AREA: _____

INITIAL FRANCHISE FEE: \$39,500 for single franchise

(check one) \$ _____

ROYALTY FEE: 6% of Gross Revenues

NATIONAL MARKING FUND: Amount we designate periodically, not to exceed 2% of Gross Revenues

RENEWAL FEE: \$2,500

TRANSFER FEE: \$1,500 (Convenience of Ownership, Section 12.2)
\$2,500, plus reimbursement of Franchisor’s cost in facilitating the transfer (including reasonable attorneys’ fees) (Non-Controlling Interest, Section 12.3)

FRANCHISOR: NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

~~3432 County Road 101~~
Minnetonka **Principal Place of Business:**
4640 Palmer Pointe Rd
Excelsior, Minnesota 5534555331

Franchisor Initial

Franchisee Initial

Address for Notices:

2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104
Miami, Florida 33137

With a copy to:

Mullin PC

2425 N. Central Expy., Suite 200
Richardson, Texas 75080

Franchisor Initial

Franchisee Initial

**FRANCHISE AGREEMENT
TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>Page</u>
1. GRANT	1
2. TERM	2
3. SITE SELECTION, CONSTRUCTION; LOCATION	3
4. FEES	4
5. TRAINING AND ASSISTANCE	6
6. OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS	7
7. MARKS AND COPYRIGHTS	12
8. SYSTEM, MANUALS AND INFORMATION	13
9. ADVERTISING AND MARKETING	14
10. POS SYSTEM; ACCOUNTING AND RECORDS; TAXES	16
11. INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR, INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION	17
12. TRANSFER OF INTEREST	19
13. DEFAULT AND TERMINATION	22
14. OBLIGATIONS UPON TERMINATION OR EXPIRATION	24
15. COVENANTS	25
16. REPRESENTATIONS	26
17. NOTICES	27
18. CONSTRUCTION	28
19. APPLICABLE LAW; DISPUTE RESOLUTION; REPRESENTATIONS	29
1. GRANT	1
2. TERM	2
3. SITE SELECTION, CONSTRUCTION; LOCATION	3
4. FEES	4
5. TRAINING AND ASSISTANCE	6
6. OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS	7
7. MARKS AND COPYRIGHTS	12
8. SYSTEM, MANUALS AND INFORMATION	13
9. ADVERTISING AND MARKETING	14
10. POS SYSTEM; ACCOUNTING AND RECORDS; TAXES	16
11. INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR, INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION	18
12. TRANSFER OF INTEREST	19
13. DEFAULT AND TERMINATION	23
14. OBLIGATIONS UPON TERMINATION OR EXPIRATION	24
15. COVENANTS	25
16. REPRESENTATIONS	26
17. NOTICES	27
18. CONSTRUCTION	28

19. APPLICABLE LAW; DISPUTE RESOLUTION; REPRESENTATIONS 29

ATTACHMENTS:

Attachment A	Glossary of Additional Terms
Attachment B	Key Terms
Attachment C	Entity Information
Attachment D-1	Guaranty and Personal Undertaking
Attachment D-2	Confidentiality and Non-compete Agreement
Attachment E	ACH Authorization
Attachment F	Lease Rider
Attachment G	Franchisee Questionnaire
Attachment H	Three Pack Addendum

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

THIS FRANCHISE AGREEMENT (“Agreement”) is made and entered into as of the Effective Date reflected in the Summary Pages (“**Effective Date**”) by and between NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC, a Texas limited liability company (“**Franchisor**”), and the franchisee identified in the Summary Pages (“**you**”).

A. Franchisor franchises the operation of restaurants featuring a wide variety of superfood smoothie bowls and healthy beverages and other menu items and merchandise, which operate under a proprietary business format and operating system (the “**System**”) and are identified by the name NAUTICAL BOWLS and other trademarks, including logos, slogans, and elements of trade dress (collectively, the “**Marks**”).

B. The distinguishing characteristics of the System include, without limitation, distinctive interior and exterior design, decor, color scheme, graphics, fixtures and furnishings, our proprietary recipes, procedures for preparing, packaging, and serving menu items, operation and customer service standards and procedures, advertising and marketing specifications and requirements, and other standards, specifications, techniques, and procedures that Franchisor designates for developing, operating, managing, and promoting a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, all of which Franchisor may change, improve, and further develop (collectively, “**Standards**”).

C. You have applied for a franchise to operate a Restaurant under the System and Marks (“**Restaurant**”) and, based on the information provided to Franchisor in support of your franchise application, Franchisor has agreed to grant you a franchise, all pursuant to the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration for the mutual promises contained in this Agreement, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties agree as follows:

1. GRANT

1.1. Grant.

1.1.1. Subject to the provisions of this Agreement, Franchisor hereby grants you the nonexclusive right to continuously operate a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant at the location identified (or to be identified) in Attachment B (“**Franchised Location**”) and to use the Marks in the operation and promotion of the Restaurant (the “**Franchised Business**”). To the extent that Franchisor, from time to time, may expand its service offerings to provide catering and delivery services, you have the right to provide such services in such area that Franchisor may authorize according to the terms of this Agreement and Franchisor’s then-current standards, policies and procedures. You hereby undertake the obligation and agree to continually operate the Franchised Business during the term hereof and strictly according to the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

1.1.2. This Agreement grants you no right, among others, to: *(a)* sublicense the use of the System or Marks, *(b)* to cobrand with another concept, *(c)* to provide on-site catering services (such as from a cart, kiosk, food truck or other mobile unit, or customer location) without Franchisor’s prior written consent, *(d)* to utilize third party delivery services (such as UberEATS, DoorDash, Postmates, GrubHub, or other third parties offering delivery) without Franchisor’s prior written consent, or *(e)* to distribute NAUTICAL BOWLS products through wholesale channels, such as supermarkets, convenience stores or other retailers, or through food service providers such as Restaurants or airlines through in-flight services.

1.2. Protected Area. During the term of this Agreement, Franchisor shall not own or operate, or grant anyone else the right to operate, a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant within the Protected Area identified in Attachment B (which excludes Captive Markets, as defined in Attachment A), but may develop, operate, and offer other concepts that may compete with franchisees in the Protected Area. Franchisor may own, operate, and franchise located competitive businesses under any trademark (including NAUTICAL

BOWLS) outside the Protected Area and in Captive Markets located within the boundaries of the Protected Area. If the Protected Area has not been identified prior to execution of this Agreement, then after you select a site for the Restaurant and Franchisor accepts your selection in accordance with Section 3.2., Franchisor will identify an area surrounding your selected site as your “Protected Area.” The Protected Area will be of the size and configuration that Franchisor determines, in its sole discretion. The Protected Area may be identified on a map, by geographic description, or by radius, but will consist of at least a quarter-mile radius surrounding the site. The parties shall complete and execute Attachment B before a real estate lease may be signed for the Restaurant premises.

1.3. Reservation of Rights. Franchisor reserves to itself all other rights in and to use the Marks. These include the right to distribute products and services identified by the Marks, such as pre-packaged products, through alternative channels of distribution including grocery stores, supermarkets, convenience stores, Restaurants, and via online, mail order, and catalog sales. Franchisor has the right to establish commissaries and catering facilities. If a catering order requires delivery into your Protected Area, Franchisor may elect to fulfill the order itself or through a third party, in which case we will credit to you the amount of the sale, less applicable taxes, and its reasonable cost of fulfilling the order.

1.4. Right to Operate Businesses Under Different Marks. Nothing in this Agreement prohibits or restricts Franchisor or its Affiliate from owning, acquiring, establishing, operating, or granting franchise rights for one or more other businesses under a different trademark or service mark (*i.e.*, a mark other than NAUTICAL BOWLS), whether or not the business is the same as or competitive with NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants.

2. TERM

2.1. Term. The “**Term**” of this Agreement begins on the Effective Date and expires, unless earlier terminated, on the 10th anniversary of the Restaurant opening, but no later than 11 years from the Effective Date, regardless of the date on which the Restaurant opens to the public for business.

2.2. Renewal. You may renew the franchise granted by this Agreement for additional consecutive five-year periods if, at the end of each term, each of the following conditions has been satisfied: **(a)** you have notified Franchisor of your intent to renew the franchise no less than 12 months and no more than 24 months before the then-current term expiration date; **(b)** you are not in default of any material provision of this Agreement and you have complied with the materials terms and conditions of this Agreement throughout the term; **(c)** you have satisfied all monetary obligations owed to Franchisor, its Affiliates and third party suppliers; **(d)** you have renovated and refurbished the Restaurant premises so that they reflect Franchisor’s then-current image, trade dress, equipment, and furnishings requirements; **(e)** you have the right to remain in possession of the Restaurant premises, or have secured an alternate site with Franchisor’s prior approval; **(f)** you comply with the then-current qualifications and training requirements; **(g)** you sign Franchisor’s then-current form of franchise agreement, the terms of which may be materially different than the terms of this Agreement, and each Owner executes a guaranty and personal undertaking in the form Franchisor prescribes; **(h)** you and each Owner sign a general and full release in favor of Franchisor and its Affiliates, and their respective, officers, directors, shareholders, members, managers, employees, and agents, of any claims arising out of or related to the franchise relationship including the offer and sale of the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise opportunity; and **(i)** the Renewal Fee, in the amount specified in the Summary Pages, has been paid.

2.3. Operation after Expiration of Term. If this Agreement expires and you continue to operate the NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant after expiration, Franchisor may, at its option declare you to be holding over. In such event, the terms of this Agreement will govern the parties’ relationship, provided that: **(a)** either party may terminate the relationship at any time during the holdover period, for any reason or for no reason, by delivering to the other party written notice of termination; and **(b)** the Royalty Fees due and payable during such holdover period shall be 150% of the Royalty Fees due and payable under this Agreement.

3. SITE SELECTION, CONSTRUCTION; LOCATION

3.1. Site Selection. You must identify and acquire a site for the Restaurant within 120 days after the Effective Date of this Agreement. The site must be located within the Site Selection Area identified in the Summary Pages, must meet Franchisor's then-current site selection criteria, and must otherwise be mutually acceptable to you and to Franchisor. Franchisor may make available to you, in its sole discretion, the services of an internal development management team or a designated third-party tenant representative consulting firm. If required, you must use the services of a designated tenant representative consulting firm and pay any fees imposed by the firm. **Although Franchisor or its tenant representative may propose sites for your consideration, you understand that ultimate site selection is solely your choice and your responsibility.**

3.2. Franchise Site Application. For each proposed site that you identify, you must deliver to Franchisor a completed franchise site application in a form Franchisor prescribes, including such information about the site as Franchisor may reasonably request to perform its evaluation. This information may include, among other things, a description of the proposed site, demographic characteristics, traffic patterns, parking, character of the neighborhood, competition from other businesses in the area, the proximity to other businesses, the nature of other businesses in proximity to the site, and other commercial characteristics (including the purchase price, rental obligations, and other lease terms for the proposed site) and the size, appearance, other physical characteristics, and a site plan of the premises. Franchisor will permit or refuse to permit development of the Restaurant at the proposed site within 10 days after the receipt of these documents and any additional information as Franchisor may reasonably require. Franchisor's failure to provide notification within this time period shall not be considered permission. **The parties acknowledge and agree that Franchisor's permission to develop the Restaurant at a particular site is not an assurance that the Restaurant will achieve a certain sales volume or level of profitability; it means only that the proposed site meets Franchisor's minimum criteria for a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant.**

3.3. Lease. If you will occupy the Franchised Location under a lease with a third-party landlord, Franchisor has the right to approve the lease terms, and the lease shall not be signed until it has been reviewed and approved by Franchisor. **The parties acknowledge and agree that Franchisor's approval of a lease does not mean that the economic terms of the lease are favorable; it means only that the lease contains the lease terms that Franchisor requires.** The lease also must contain the terms reflected in Attachment F, including Franchisor's option to assume the lease in the event of expiration or termination of this Agreement. You shall provide to Franchisor a fully executed copy of the lease within 10 days after its execution.

3.4. Restaurant Design and Build-out. You shall follow Franchisor's procedures for construction and build-out, shall construct and build out the facility according to Franchisor's standards and specifications for design, decor and layout, and shall equip the business according to Franchisor's requirements for fixtures, furnishings, equipment, interior and exterior signage, artwork and graphics, and awnings. Without limiting the foregoing, you shall comply with Franchisor's signage requirements, including any interior or exterior signage, Franchisor requires now or at any time during the franchise term. You are solely responsible for obtaining all government approvals, zoning classifications, permits, and clearances related to the Restaurant and for complying with applicable requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Amendments Act. During construction, you must maintain general liability and property damage insurance of the type and with the limits Franchisor requires, protecting you, Franchisor, and its Affiliates, and their respective partners, shareholders, directors, agents, and employees. Such policy or policies shall be written by a responsible insurer or insurers acceptable to Franchisor and shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of Franchisor and its Affiliates, and their respective partners, shareholders, directors, agents, and employees. You shall notify Franchisor in writing when construction begins, and thereafter shall provide a monthly progress report. Franchisor and its designees have the right to inspect the site at all reasonable times.

3.5. **Opening.** When a site is identified, the parties will mutually agree on an opening date (“**Opening Date**”), which will be no later than six months after the date you secure a location for the Restaurant, or more than a year after the Effective Date, whichever is sooner. The Opening Date will be reflected on Attachment B. You must cause the Restaurant to open for business by the Opening Date, but may open for business only with Franchisor’s prior written permission, which will be granted only if: (a) all amounts due Franchisor under this Agreement have been paid; (b) the Restaurant has been constructed and equipped according to Franchisor’s standards and specifications; (c) all of your pre-opening and training obligations have been satisfied; (d) Franchisor has received from you a signed ACH Authorization (Attachment E); (e) Franchisor has received from you a fully executed copy of your Restaurant lease containing the mandatory lease terms described in Attachment F; (f) Franchisor has received from you certificates of insurance as required by Article 11; and (g) you are otherwise in good standing under this Agreement.

3.6. **Relocation.** You may relocate the Franchised Business only with Franchisor’s prior written consent. Franchisor will grant its consent if your lease expires or terminates through no fault of yours, or if the Restaurant premises is destroyed or materially damaged by fire, flood, or other natural catastrophe (“**Innocent Loss or Casualty**”) and you are not in default of this Agreement or any other agreement between you and Franchisor. Selection of the relocation site and Restaurant construction, renovation, and opening shall be governed by this Article 3; provided that if the relocation occurred as a result of the loss of an Innocent Loss or Casualty, the Restaurant must be open for business at the new location within six months of closing at the previous location and if the relocation occurred for any other reason, the Restaurant must be open for business at the new location within five days of closing at the previous location. Franchisor may, in its sole discretion, assist you in the site transfer and may offer assistance in, but is not limited to, coordinating suppliers for the new location, training of new staff, and marketing planning assistance. You are solely responsible for all relocation costs and expenses. If Franchisor provides any assistance, you must reimburse Franchisor, upon demand, for all out-of-pocket costs that it incurs in connection with providing such assistance.

4. FEES

4.1. **Initial Franchise Fee.** Upon execution of this Agreement, you shall pay Franchisor an Initial Franchise Fee in the amount specified in the Summary Pages, which is fully earned and nonrefundable upon payment.

4.2. **Royalty Fees.** During the Term of this Agreement, you shall pay to Franchisor a nonrefundable and continuing Royalty Fee in the amount specified in the Summary Pages for the right to use the System and the Marks.

4.3. **Technology Fee.** The parties acknowledge and agree that the technological environment is rapidly changing and that it is difficult to anticipate the cost of developing, acquiring, implementing, and licensing Internet and communications technologies that may benefit franchisees of the System. Accordingly, Franchisor has the right to impose a Technology Fee to cover costs associated with your use of mobile apps, gift card processing fees, and other communication technologies and digital services. You agree to pay the Technology Fee according to the terms prescribed by Franchisor.

4.4. **Advances, Purchases, and Reimbursements.** In addition to all other payments provided in this Agreement, you shall pay Franchisor and its Affiliates promptly when due all amounts advanced by Franchisor or which Franchisor has paid, or for which it has become obligated to pay on your behalf for any reason whatsoever; and shall pay all amounts due to Franchisor, its Affiliates, or third party suppliers, for the purchase of products, supplies or services relating to the Franchised Business. If Franchisor or an Affiliate of Franchisor elects to compensate a customer for a negative experience according to Section 6.1(f), you must reimburse the amount of the payment.

4.5. **No Set-off Rights.** You may not set-off, deduct, or otherwise withhold any fees or other amounts due Franchisor under this Agreement on grounds of alleged nonperformance by Franchisor of any of its

obligations or for any other reason. Withholding payment of Royalty Fees, or any other amounts due Franchisor is a material breach of this Agreement.

4.6. Accounting Period. Franchisor has the right to define applicable accounting periods, for purposes of calculating and paying amounts due under this Agreement. Each period, which may be defined in terms of days, weeks, or months, in Franchisor's sole discretion, will be considered an "**Accounting Period**" for all purposes under this Agreement. Franchisor has the right to change or modify the definition of an Accounting Period, in its discretion, for the entire NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise system, generally, or for you, individually, if you fail to comply with this Agreement. Franchisor shall provide you at least 30 days advance written notice of any change in Accounting Period affecting the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise system, or at least 30 days advance written notice of any change in Accounting Period affecting you, individually, based on your noncompliance under this Agreement. You shall make all changes necessary to conform to such change or modification.

4.7. Payment Terms and Procedures. All payments required by this Agreement shall be paid within the time Franchisor specifies ("**Due Date**"). If the Due Date is not a Business Day, then payment shall be due on the next Business Day. Franchisor shall determine the amount of the Royalty Fee, Advertising Fee, and other amounts due under this Agreement by accessing and retrieving Gross Revenues data from your computer system, as permitted by Article 10. On each Due Date, Franchisor will transfer from your commercial bank operating account ("**Account**") the fees due and owing. If you have not reported Gross Revenues for any reporting period, or if Franchisor determines that you have underreported Gross Revenues, Franchisor also has the right to transfer from the Account, at its option, an estimated Royalty Fee, and Advertising Fee, which estimate shall be based on prior amounts until sufficient documentation exists to prepare an accurate reconciliation. Any underpayments will bear interest according to Section 4.9., below. Any overpayment will be credited against future payments due under this Agreement.

4.8. Electronic Fund Transfer. You shall participate in Franchisor's then-current electronic funds transfer program. To this end, you shall: *(a)* comply with Franchisor's procedures, as specified in the Manual, or otherwise in writing; *(b)* perform those acts and sign and deliver those documents as may be necessary to accomplish payment by electronic funds transfer as described in this Section 4.8; *(c)* execute and deliver to Franchisor a form authorizing Franchisor to collect the Royalty Fee, and all other amounts due under this Agreement; and *(d)* make sufficient funds available in the Account for withdrawal by electronic funds transfer no later than the Due Date for payment thereof. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article 4, Franchisor reserves the right to modify, at its option, the method by which you pay the Royalty Fee, and other amounts owed under this Agreement upon receipt of written notice by Franchisor. Your failure to have sufficient funds in the Account is a material breach of this Agreement.

4.9. Interest; Nonsufficient Funds Charge. Any payments not received by Franchisor by the Due Date will accrue interest at the rate of 18% per annum or the highest lawful interest rate permitted by the jurisdiction in which the Restaurant operates, whichever is less. If any check, draft, electronic or otherwise, is returned for insufficient funds, you shall pay to Franchisor a nonsufficient funds charge in the amount of \$100 (which may be increased each year by an amount not to exceed 10% of the then-current amount) and reimburse Franchisor for all expenses that it incurs on account of such nonsufficient funds.

4.10. Partial Payments; Application of Payments. If you pay less than the amount due, your payment will be considered a partial payment on account. Franchisor may accept such payment as a partial payment, irrespective of any endorsement or other statement that the payment constitutes full payment. Franchisor's acceptance of such partial payment will not be considered a waiver of any of its right to demand or receive full payment, and you hereby waive any estoppel defense in this regard. Franchisor may apply your payments to any indebtedness, in its sole and reasonable discretion, regardless of any designation that accompanies the payment.

4.11. Payment of Taxes. If any tax is imposed on payment owed to Franchisor (other than a tax imposed on Franchisor's net income), then you shall be responsible and shall pay the tax in addition to your payment

obligation, the intent being that Franchisor shall receive all payments in full, as if no such tax had been imposed.

5. TRAINING AND ASSISTANCE

5.1. Initial Training. Before you may open the Restaurant for business, Franchisor will provide, and your Key Person and one other Restaurant Manager must attend and complete to Franchisor's satisfaction Franchisor's initial training program. The initial training program will take place at a location and time that Franchisor designates. There is no tuition or other charge for three individuals to attend initial training. At your request, Franchisor may permit additional individuals to attend the same training program, subject to space availability and payment of a reasonable tuition. You are responsible for all training-related costs and expenses including employee salary, travel, lodging, and dining costs.

5.2. Opening Assistance.

5.2.1. If this Agreement is being signed in conjunction with your first NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, Franchisor will make available a representative to provide up to three days of on-site opening assistance. At your request, or if Franchisor deems necessary, Franchisor shall provide additional on-site opening assistance, subject to availability of personnel. In such event, Franchisor has the right to charge (and you agree to pay) a reasonable fee for such assistance, and you must reimburse Franchisor for all out-of-pocket costs that it incurs in connection with providing such additional assistance, including travel, lodging, and dining costs for the individual(s) providing such assistance.

5.2.2. If this Agreement is being signed in conjunction with your second or additional NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant(s), Franchisor has no obligation to offer on-site opening assistance. However, Franchisor may elect to provide such on-site opening assistance as it deems necessary and appropriate, in its sole discretion. In such event, Franchisor has the right to charge (and you agree to pay) a per diem fee not to exceed \$500 per individual providing such assistance per day, and you must reimburse Franchisor for all out-of-pocket costs that it incurs in connection with providing such on-site opening assistance, including travel, lodging and dining costs for the individual(s) providing such assistance.

5.3. Pre-Opening Consultation. Franchisor shall provide such pre-opening consultation and advice as it deems appropriate, which may include advice with regard to the development and operation of the Restaurant, building layout, furnishings, fixtures, and equipment, plans and specifications, purchasing and inventory control, and such other matters as Franchisor deems appropriate.

5.4. Ongoing Consultation. Franchisor shall provide such ongoing consultation and advice as it deems appropriate, which may include information about new product development, instruction concerning the operation and management of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, advertising and marketing advice, and financial and accounting advice. Such consultation and advice may be provided, in Franchisor's discretion, through Restaurant visits by Franchisor personnel, via meetings, seminars or conferences, and/or through dissemination of electronic or printed materials.

5.5. Additional Training. You shall cause your Key Person, Restaurant managers, and/or other employees that Franchisor designates to attend such additional courses, seminars, and other training programs as Franchisor may reasonably require. You may also request additional training. Franchisor may charge a reasonable tuition for these additional courses, seminars, or other training programs, and you are responsible for all training-related costs and expenses including, without limitation, salary, travel, lodging, and dining costs for all employees who participate in the training.

5.6 Mandatory Ongoing Training. Franchisor from time to time may provide and, if it does, may require that previously trained and experienced Franchisees or their Key Person, managers, or employees attend and successfully complete refresher training programs or seminars at such location as may be designated by Franchisor, and at Franchisee's expense; provided, however, that attendance will not be required at more than three such programs for a minimum of two days each in any calendar year. Franchisor may charge a

reasonable tuition for these training programs All franchisees are required to attend the annual convention. If you fail to attend the convention, or any other convention or work shop that Franchisor may schedule from time to time, but not more than once per quarter, Franchisor reserves the right to charge you their then-current non-attendance fee (currently, \$1,000 per franchise).

5.7. Performance by Delegate. You acknowledge and agree that any rights or duties of Franchisor may be exercised and/or performed by any of Franchisor’s designees, agents, or employees. Franchisor reserves the right to retain the services of a master development agent in the geographic area in which the Restaurant will be located. In such event, the master development agent may provide certain consultation, advice, services, and assistance, as Franchisor may direct. You acknowledge and agree that you are not an intended third-party beneficiary under any agreement between Franchisor and any master development agent.

6. OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISED BUSINESS

6.1. General Operating Requirements. You understand and acknowledge that every detail of the System is essential to maintain and enhance the goodwill associated with the Marks and the integrity of the brand. Accordingly, you agree as follows:

(a) To operate the Franchised Business according to the highest applicable health standards and ratings, to timely obtain any and all permits, certificates, or licenses necessary for the lawful operation of the Franchised Business, to operate the Franchised Business according to Franchisor’s operating methods, standards, and specifications, and to maintain, at all times, a high moral and ethical standards in the operation of the Franchised Business.

(b) To accept debit cards, credit cards, gift cards, or other non-cash systems that Franchisor specifies periodically to enable customers to purchase menu items and other authorized goods and services, and to install all hardware and/or software necessary to accept such payments.

(c) To take reasonable precautions to prevent data security breaches, and to comply with breach notification statutes and other legal requirements in the event of a security breach.

(d) To notify Franchisor by telephone and confirm in writing within 72 hours of any investigation or violation, actual or alleged, concerning any health, liquor, or narcotics laws or regulations and notify Franchisor in writing within five days of the commencement of any investigation, action, suit or proceeding, and the issuance of any order, writ, injunction, award, or decree of any court, agency or other government instrumentality, which may adversely affect the operation or financial condition of the Franchised Business.

(e) Upon the occurrence of a Crisis Management Event, to immediately inform Franchisor’s Chief Executive Officer (or as otherwise instructed in the Manuals) by telephone, and to cooperate fully with Franchisor with respect to Franchisor’s response to the Crisis Management Event.

(f) To process and handle all consumer complaints connected with or relating to the Restaurant, and to promptly notify Franchisor of all: (i) food-related illnesses; (ii) safety or health violations; (iii) claims exceeding \$1,000; and (iv) any other material claims against or losses suffered by the Franchised Business. You shall maintain any communications with governmental authorities affecting the Restaurant during the term of this Agreement and for one year after the expiration or earlier termination hereof. If any customer of the Franchised Business contacts Franchisor to report a complaint about Franchisee’s Restaurant, the parties agree that Franchisor may, in its discretion, compensate the customer in such manner as Franchisor determines appropriate, and you agree to reimburse Franchisor the amount of such compensation upon demand by Franchisor.

(g) To participate in any online ordering system that may be developed for the System according to its terms.

6.2. Key Person. The Restaurant must at all times be supervised by the individual you designate as your “Key Person.” Your Key Person will have the authority to communicate, and be responsible for

communicating, with Franchisor on all matters concerning the Franchised Business, and will have full control over day-to-day Restaurant management and operations. Your Key Person must attend and successfully complete Franchisor's initial training program and all additional training (including food safety training) that Franchisor requires, to Franchisor's satisfaction. Franchisor shall have approved your Key Person as meeting its then-current qualifications for such position. If your Key Person ceases to serve in, or no longer qualifies for, such position, you shall designate another qualified person to serve as your Key Person within 30 days after the date the prior Key Person ceases to serve or no longer qualifies to serve. Any proposed replacement Key Person must successfully complete the initial training program and such other training (including food safety training) required by Franchisor, and be approved by Franchisor, before assuming their position as Key Person and, in no event, later than 90 days after the previous Key Person ceased to serve in such position.

6.3. Employees. The Restaurant shall at all times be under the direct, on-premises supervision of either your Key Person or an assistant manager who has satisfied our training requirements. You shall maintain a competent, conscientious, and trained staff, and shall take such steps as are necessary to ensure that your employees render competent, prompt, courteous, and knowledgeable service in accordance with the Standards. You shall cause all employees, while working at the Restaurant, to present a neat and clean appearance and to wear uniforms of such color, design, and other specifications as Franchisor may designate from time to time; and shall prohibit the wearing of such uniforms except during and within the scope of an employee's employment. The parties acknowledge and agree that these requirements are necessary to preserve the goodwill identified by the Marks. The parties further acknowledge and agree that Franchisor neither dictates nor controls labor or employment matters for you or your employees. You are exclusively responsible for hiring personnel, for determining the number of jobs offered or job vacancies to be filled, for determining and changing employee wages and benefits and work hours, and for disciplining and discharging your employees. You are exclusively responsible for labor relations with your employees.

6.4. Authorized Menu Offerings. You must offer and sell all menu items that Franchisor requires, and only those menu items that Franchisor has approved. You shall prepare, package, and serve all menu items in accordance with Franchisor's recipes and standards and its procedures for preparation, presentation, and service as communicated to you from time to time via the Manual or other written directives. Such standards and procedures may include, without limitation, adherence to recipes (including use of prescribed ingredients and prescribed measure of ingredients), use of containers and paper goods bearing the Marks, packaging procedures, product holding times, and other standards for displaying for sale menu items and other merchandise. You shall participate in all market research programs that Franchisor requires, which includes test-marketing new products, purchasing a reasonable quantity of new products for test-marketing, promoting the sale of the new products, and providing Franchisor with timely reports and test results for all such programs. You shall participate in all telephone, online, and other ordering programs developed for use by NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants, and pay all third-party fees required for such participation.

6.5. Purchase Requirements. You shall purchase and install, at your expense, all fixtures, furnishings, equipment, decor, signs, and other items as Franchisor may reasonably direct; and shall refrain from installing or permitting to be installed on or about the Restaurant premises any fixtures, furnishings, equipment, decor, signs, vending, or game machines or other items not approved for use by Franchisor. In addition, you shall purchase and use only ingredients, containers, packaging materials, and supplies that conform to Franchisor's standards and specifications; and shall purchase, use, offer and/or promote the food and beverage products and other ingredients which are produced or manufactured in accordance with Franchisor's proprietary recipes, specifications and/or formulas or which Franchisor designates as **"Proprietary Products."** **Franchisor makes no warranty and expressly disclaims all warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for any particular purpose, with respect to services, products, equipment (including, without limitation, any required computer systems), supplies, fixtures, furnishings or other items approved or required for use in connection with your operation of the Franchised Business.**

6.6. Purchases from Designated Sources.

6.6.1. Franchisor has developed and owns Proprietary Products for use in preparing menu items. The formulae and methods of preparation of the Proprietary Products are trade secrets of Franchisor. Franchisor will (1) manufacture and supply Proprietary Products to Franchisees of Franchisor, and/or (2) disclose the formulae for and methods and preparation of the Proprietary Products to a limited number of suppliers who will be authorized by Franchisor to manufacture Proprietary Products to Franchisor's precise specifications and sell Proprietary Products to Franchisees of Franchisor. Franchisee acknowledges that he will be required to purchase Proprietary Products from Franchisor or a limited number of suppliers so authorized by Franchisor. Franchisor or its designees agree to sell to Franchisees such quantities of Proprietary Products as Franchisee requires from time to time in the operation of the Franchised Restaurant and at prices in effect at the time of purchase. All NAUTICAL BOWLS businesses are required to use in their operations Proprietary Products as designated by Franchisor. You shall purchase from Franchisor's approved or designated suppliers or distributors ("**Approved Suppliers**") all products and services necessary to construct the Restaurant location (including fixtures, furniture, equipment, signs, décor items, audio/visual systems) and to operate the Franchised Business. and operate the franchised business. Approved Suppliers may be designated for, without limitation, food and beverage items (prepared food, ingredients, and beverages), uniforms, shirts, and all merchandise and items intended for retail sale, advertising and marketing materials, gift cards, packaging, supplies, insurance, and accounting and bookkeeping services. Franchisor shall communicate to you information about Approved Suppliers via the Manual or otherwise in writing. Franchisor may receive money or other benefits from Approved Suppliers based on your purchases; you agree that Franchisor has the right to retain and use all such benefits as it deems appropriate, in its sole discretion.

6.6.2. You may purchase items and services for which Franchisor has not identified Approved Suppliers from any source, so long as the items and services meet Franchisor's specifications. These specifications may include brand requirements.

6.6.3. Franchisor may from time to time modify the list of Approved Suppliers and product and service specifications. You shall promptly comply with all such modifications.

6.6.4. Franchisor may approve one or more suppliers for any goods or materials and may approve a supplier only as to certain goods or materials. Franchisor may concentrate purchases with one or more suppliers or distributors to obtain lower prices and/or the best advertising support and/or services for any group of NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants or any other group of Restaurants franchised or operated by Franchisor or its Affiliates. Approval of a supplier may be conditioned on requirements relating to the frequency of delivery, reporting capabilities, standards of service, including prompt attention to complaints, or other criteria, and concentration of purchases, as set forth above, and may be temporary pending a further evaluation of such supplier by Franchisor. Franchisor may establish commissaries and distribution facilities owned and operated by Franchisor or an Affiliate that Franchisor may designate as an approved supplier. **Franchisor makes no representation concerning, and expressly disclaims any liability arising out of or in connection with, the services rendered or products furnished by any supplier approved or designated by Franchisor. Franchisor's approval or consent to any services, goods, suppliers, or any other individual, entity or any item shall not create any liability to Franchisor.**

6.6.5. If you propose to purchase from a previously unapproved source, you shall submit to Franchisor a written request for such approval, or shall request the supplier to submit a written request on its own behalf. Franchisor has no obligation to consider your request, but if it does, may condition its consideration on your providing requested information, on being granted access to inspect the supplier's facilities, and/or delivery of samples to Franchisor and/or to an independent, certified laboratory Franchisor designates. Franchisor also shall have the right to impose a reasonable testing fee equal to \$1,000 or Franchisor's actual testing and inspection costs, whichever is less. Additionally, Franchisor may require you to reimburse Franchisor its costs for related travel, lodging, and salary for the individual(s) performing

the inspection or training. Franchisor will use commercially reasonable efforts to notify you within 30 days of your request as to whether you are authorized to purchase such products from that supplier. Franchisor reserves the right, at its option, to re-inspect the facilities and products of any such approved supplier and to revoke its approval of any supplier upon the suppliers' failure to meet Franchisor's criteria for quality and reliability.

6.7. Franchised Location; Vehicles.

6.7.1. You shall maintain the Restaurant (including adjacent public areas) in a clean, orderly condition and in excellent repair and in accordance with Franchisor's standards. You shall, at your expense, make such additions, alterations, repairs, and replacements under this Agreement as may be required for that purpose, including, without limitation, such periodic repainting, repairing, and replacing of obsolete or deteriorated signs, furnishings, fixtures, equipment, and decor as Franchisor may reasonably direct. Upon Franchisor's request, you shall install and maintain at the Restaurant interactive multi-media equipment, devices, and facilities Franchisor requires, including, without limitation, approved surveillance systems, music systems, Wi-Fi, and other wireless Internet and communications systems, and interactive displays, including plasma or LCD screens. You must cause the Restaurant to play only the music or types of music that Franchisor designates. If a designated music provider has been identified, you must acquire music from such provider.

6.7.2 You shall not cause or permit vending, gaming machines, pay telephones, automatic teller machines, Internet kiosks, or any other mechanical or electrical device to be installed or maintained at the Restaurant.

6.7.3 You shall purchase and install, at your expense, all fixtures, furnishings, equipment, decor, signs, and other items as Franchisor may reasonably direct from time to time in the Manual or otherwise in writing in accordance with Franchisor's standards and specifications; and shall refrain from installing or permitting to be installed on or about the Franchised Location, any fixtures, furnishings, equipment, decor, signs, vending, or game machines or other items not previously approved in writing as meeting Franchisor's standards and specifications.

6.7.4 At Franchisor's request, but not more often than once every 60 months (and in addition to any work which you may undertake pursuant to other sections of this Agreement), you shall refurbish the Franchised Location, at your own expense, to conform to the building design, trade dress, color schemes, and presentation of the Marks in a manner consistent with the then-current public image for new or remodeled NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants in the System, including, without limitation, replacement or renovation of equipment, remodeling, redecoration, and modifications to existing improvements and reasonable structural changes that Franchisor may reasonably require or that may be required by law.

6.7.5 Any vehicle used in connection with the operation of the Restaurant shall be maintained in excellent condition and repair, and shall meet Franchisor's standards and specifications.

6.8. Days and Hours of Operation. You shall cause the Restaurant to be open and in normal operation for such hours and days as Franchisor may specify in the Manual or in other written directives, and only during the hours and on the days that Franchisor permits.

6.9. Quality Assurance. Franchisor has the right to enter upon the Restaurant premises during regular business hours for purposes of conducting quality assurance audits and mystery shops and to assess customer satisfaction. During these inspections, Franchisor may obtain for testing purposes and without charge, reasonable quantities of ingredients, products and supplies. Mystery shops may be conducted by Franchisor personnel at Franchisor's expense, or by independent, third party providers at your expense.

6.10. Modification to the System. You shall at your own expense, make such alterations, additions, or modifications to the Franchised Location as Franchisor may reasonably require to accommodate changes made by Franchisor to the System, including, without limitation, changes to menu items or market

positioning. You have 90 days from receipt of notice regarding re-imaging requirements in which to make the required alterations, additions, or modifications to the Franchised Location. You shall not implement any modification to the System without Franchisor's express prior written consent.

6.11. Pricing. To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, Franchisor has the right to establish the maximum and minimum prices that you charge to your customers and to impose other pricing requirements, including participation in price promotions, to the extent permitted by applicable law.

6.12. Intranet/Extranet System. Franchisor may, at its option, establish and maintain an intranet or extranet system through which members of the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise network may communicate and through which Franchisor may disseminate updates to the Manual and other Confidential Information. You shall participate in such system and comply with all system policies and procedures. Franchisor has the right to impose a reasonable user fee not to exceed \$1,000 per year.

6.13. Website. Franchisor may, but shall not be obligated to, establish and maintain from time to time Franchisor's website to provide information about the System and the goods and services that NAUTICAL BOWLS provide. Franchisor has sole discretion and control over the design and content of Franchisor's website.

6.14. Social Media. You shall follow Franchisor's mandatory specifications, standards, operating procedures, and rules for using social media in connection with your operation of the Restaurant and you will agree to any Social Media policy Franchisor implements, which may include ownership of accounts. The term "**Social Media**" includes, without limitation, personal blogs, common social networks such as GOOGLE MY BUSINESS, YELP, FACEBOOK, SNAPCHAT, INSTAGRAM, LINKEDIN, TWITTER, or YOUTUBE, applications supported by mobile platforms such as iOS and Android, virtual worlds, file, audio and video-sharing sites, and other similar social networking or media sites, mobile platforms, or tools.

6.15. Technology Risk. You acknowledge and agree that technology is constantly changing. Technologic devices and computer systems are always being updated, improved, replaced, and discontinued. Consequently, computer systems are sometimes incompatible and are susceptible to Internet, computer system, and communication failures. By entering into this Agreement, you assume all of the risk of all such issues and technology failures, which you acknowledge may affect your ability to order or receive products or to conduct business, and you acknowledge that Franchisor is not responsible for any damages caused by such issues or technology failures, including lost sales or profits.

6.16. Customer Privacy. The parties acknowledge and agree that protection of customer privacy and credit card information is necessary to protect the goodwill of businesses operating under the Marks and System. Accordingly, you agree that you shall cause the Restaurant to meet or exceed, at all times, all applicable security standards developed by the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standards ("**PCI DSS**") council or its successor and other regulations and industry standards applicable to the protection of customer privacy and credit card information, including but not limited to the Fair and Accurate Credit Transaction Act ("**FACTA**"), and all other data security requirements Franchisor may prescribe. You are solely responsible for educating yourself as to these regulations and standards and for achieving and maintaining applicable compliance certifications. You shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless Franchisor, Franchisor's affiliates, and their respective shareholders, directors, officers, employees, agents, successors and assignees ("**Franchisor Indemnitee**") (from and against all losses, damages, liabilities, deficiencies, actions, judgments, interest, awards, penalties, fines, costs or expenses of whatever kind, including but not limited to notification and investigation expenses, reasonable attorneys' fees, the cost of enforcing any right to indemnification hereunder, and the cost of pursuing any insurance providers, arising out of or resulting from any third-party claim or investigation against any Franchisor Indemnitee arising out of or resulting from your failure to comply with any of your obligations under this Section 6.16).

6.17. Best Efforts. You shall use your best efforts to promote and increase the sales and recognition of products and services offered through the Franchised Business. You shall require all of your employees,

managers, officers, agents and representatives to make a good faith effort to enhance and improve the System and the sales of all goods and services provided as part of the System.

6.18. Administrative Fee. If at any time your Franchised Business fails to conform to System requirements, Franchisor has the right to impose and collect from you an administrative fee as described in this Section 6.18 (“**Administrative Fee**”). Specifically, *(a)* Franchisor may impose and collect from you a \$250 Administrative Fee for each “enforcement effort” that Franchisor undertakes on account of your noncompliance with System Standards (e.g., a letter, email, or telephone communication notifying you of noncompliance or continued noncompliance), and *(b)* if Franchisor has notified you of noncompliance and you have failed to correct the issue within seven days, Franchisor may impose and collect from you a \$250 Administrative Fee per week until the issue has been corrected to our satisfaction. Franchisor also may impose and collect a \$250 Administrative Fee if you fail to acknowledge receipt of Franchisor’s communications to you, or to respond to Franchisor’s communications within 24 hours of delivery. This fee is not a penalty, but is intended to compensate Franchisor for the additional costs that it incurs in enforcing your compliance with System Standards, and is in addition to and not in lieu of any other rights or remedies that Franchisor may have based on your noncompliance with System Standards. Franchisor may impose and collect the Administrative Fee whether or not the noncompliance at issue is of the type or degree that constitutes a material default of your obligations under this Agreement and, if it is, whether or not a cure period applies. At Franchisor’s option, Franchisor may require you to demonstrate full compliance with your obligations by submitting to Franchisor a comprehensive walk-through video of your Franchised Business’ premises in accordance with our Standards.

7. MARKS AND COPYRIGHTS

7.1. Franchisor’s Representations. Franchisor represents to you that it has the right to use and to sublicense to you the right to use the Marks in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

7.2. Acknowledgments. You acknowledge that Franchisor or its Affiliate owns all right, title, and interest in and to the Marks and the goodwill associated with the Marks, and that you have no ownership interest in the Marks. You further acknowledge and agree that any and all goodwill associated with the Restaurant and identified by the Marks is Franchisor’s property and shall inure directly and exclusively to the benefit of Franchisor and that, upon the expiration or termination of this Agreement for any reason, no monetary amount shall be assigned as attributable to any goodwill associated with your use of the Marks. You understand and agree that any use of the Marks other than as expressly authorized by this Agreement, without Franchisor’s prior written consent, may constitute an infringement of Franchisor’s rights herein and that the right to use the Marks granted herein does not extend beyond the termination or expiration of this Agreement.

7.3. Use of the Marks. You shall use only the Marks designated by Franchisor, shall use them only in the manner that Franchisor authorizes and permits, and shall use them with the symbols “®”, “™”, or “SM”, as appropriate. You shall use the Marks only in connection with the operation and promotion of the Franchised Business, and only in the manner prescribed by Franchisor. You may not contest ownership or validity of the Marks or any registration thereof, or engage in any conduct that adversely affects the ownership or registration of the Marks, or Franchisor’s right to use or to sublicense the use of the Marks. You shall execute all documents that Franchisor requests in order to protect the Marks or to maintain their validity and enforceability.

7.4. Restriction Against Use in Your Legal Name. You may not use the Marks or any part thereof in your legal name, and may not use them to incur any obligation or indebtedness on Franchisor’s behalf. You shall comply with our instructions in filing and maintaining the requisite trade name or fictitious name registrations, and shall execute any documents necessary to obtain protection of the Marks or to maintain their continued validity and enforceability.

7.5. Restriction Against Use of the Marks and Copyrighted Works on the Internet. You may not use the Marks or any part or derivative thereof or any of Franchisor's Copyrighted Works on the Internet, except as expressly permitted in writing. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, you may not use the Marks or any part or derivative of the Marks as part of any URL or domain name, and may not register the Marks or any part or derivative of the Marks as part of any user name on any gaming website or social networking website (such as GOOGLE MY BUSINESS, YELP, FACEBOOK, INSTAGRAM, or TWITTER), whether or not such social media platform is used for commercial gain, or as part of any unauthorized email address. You also may not display on any website (including commercial websites, gaming websites, and social networking websites) Franchisor's Copyrighted Works, which include the design portion of its Marks, or any menu items or collateral merchandise identified by the Marks.

7.6. Notice. You shall identify yourself as an independent franchise owner of the Franchised Business in conjunction with any use of the Marks or operation of the Franchised Business, including, but not limited to, such use on invoices, order forms, receipts, business stationery, business cards, and contracts, as well as at such conspicuous locations at the Restaurant as Franchisor may designate in writing. The form and content of such notice shall comply with the standards set forth in the Manuals.

7.7. Infringement. You shall promptly notify Franchisor of any suspected unauthorized use of, or any challenge to the validity of the Marks, Copyrighted Works, or any challenge to Franchisor's or its Affiliate's ownership of, Franchisor's license to use and to license others to use, or your right to use, the Marks or Copyrighted Works licensed under this Agreement. You acknowledge that Franchisor or its Affiliate has the right to direct and control any administrative proceeding or litigation, or other adjudicative proceeding involving the Marks or Copyrighted Works, including any settlement thereof. Franchisor or its Affiliate has the right, but not the obligation, to take action against uses by others that may constitute infringement of the Marks or Copyrighted Works. Franchisor shall defend you against any third-party claim, suit, or demand arising out of your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Works. If Franchisor, in its sole discretion, determines that you have used the Marks and Copyrighted Works in accordance with this Agreement, the cost of such defense, including the cost of any judgment or settlement, shall be borne by Franchisor. If Franchisor, in its sole discretion, determines that you have not used the Marks and Copyrighted Works in accordance with this Agreement, the cost of such defense, including the cost of any judgment or settlement, shall be borne by you. In the event of any litigation relating to your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Works, you shall execute any and all documents and do such acts as may, in the opinion of Franchisor, be necessary to carry out such defense or prosecution, including, but not limited to, becoming a nominal party to any legal action. Except to the extent that such litigation is the result of your use of the Marks or Copyrighted Works in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this Agreement, Franchisor agrees to reimburse you for your associated costs.

7.8. Changes to the Marks. Franchisor reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to designate one or more new, modified, or replacement Marks for your use and to require your use of any such new, modified, or replacement Marks in addition to or in lieu of any previously designated Marks. You must comply with any such directive within 60 days following your receipt of Franchisor's written notice to you.

8. SYSTEM, MANUALS AND INFORMATION

8.1. Manuals. Franchisor will provide you access to the Manuals, which may be in electronic format. You shall operate the Franchised Business in accordance with the standards, methods, policies, and procedures specified in the Manuals. The Manuals shall at all times remain the sole property of Franchisor. You shall ensure that your copy of the Manuals is kept current at all times, and in the event of any dispute as to the contents of the Manuals, the terms of the master copy of the Manuals maintained by Franchisor shall be controlling. If your copy of the Manual is lost or destroyed, or if you fail to return the Manual upon expiration or termination of this Agreement, you must pay Franchisor a \$250 Manual replacement fee.

8.2. System Modification. You acknowledge that the System, the Manuals, and the products and services offered by the Franchised Business may be modified, (such as, but not limited to, the addition,

deletion, and modification of menu items, operating procedures, products and services) from time to time by Franchisor. You agree to comply, at your expense, with all such modifications, including, without limitation, all requirements to implement the modifications, such as replacement or renovation of equipment, remodeling, redecoration, and modifications to existing improvements, including structural changes. Franchisor shall notify you of any such System changes and you shall implement any System changes upon receipt of notice thereof from Franchisor and shall complete their implementation within such time as Franchisor may reasonably specify. For purposes of this Agreement, System changes shall include, without limitation, changes in any of the categories referred to in this [Section 8.2](#).

8.3. **Confidentiality.** You shall maintain the confidentiality of all Confidential Information. You shall use Confidential Information only in connection with the operation of the Franchised Business and shall divulge Confidential Information only to your employees and only on a need-to-know basis.

9. ADVERTISING AND MARKETING

9.1. **General.** All of your promotional and marketing materials shall be presented in a dignified manner and shall conform to Franchisor's standards and specifications related to advertising, marketing, and trademark use. You shall submit to Franchisor samples of proposed promotional and marketing materials, and notify Franchisor of the intended media, before first publication or use. Franchisor shall use good faith efforts to approve or disapprove proposed promotional and marketing materials within 10 days of their receipt. You may not use the promotional or marketing materials until Franchisor expressly approves the materials and the proposed media. Once approved, you may use the materials only in connection with the media for which they were approved. Franchisor may disapprove your promotional or marketing materials, or the media for which they were approved, at any time, and you must discontinue using any disapproved materials or media upon your receipt of written notice of disapproval.

9.2. **Opening Day Promotion and Initial Marketing Campaign.** Before your Restaurant opens for business, you must conduct a grand opening advertising campaign that conforms to the Standards.

9.3. **National Marketing Fund.** Franchisor may establish a National Marketing Fund ("**Fund**"). If the Fund is established, Franchisee will be required to contribute to the Fund an amount that Franchisor determines from time to time, not to exceed the amount stated on the Summary Page.

9.3.1. Franchisor has the right to use Fund monies, in its sole discretion, to pay for creative development services (including creation and modification of design and trade dress, logos, menu design, graphics and vehicle wraps, and advertising and promotional items, including the cost of photography services and design software), preparing and procuring market studies, providing or obtaining marketing services (including, without limitation, new product development; conducting customer surveys, focus groups, and marketing-related mystery shops and customer interviews); employing advertising and/or public relations agencies; developing, producing, distributing and placing advertising (including, without limitation, preparing and conducting media advertising campaigns in various media, local advertising and promotion in a particular area or market, or for the benefit of one or more particular Restaurants in connection with opening promotions or otherwise), conducting and administering in-store promotions; preparing and executing direct mail advertising, and developing, producing and purchasing point-of-sale advertising, menus and menu boards, and other sales aids and promotional items and materials); new product development and development of product packaging; developing, updating and hosting Franchisor's web site (including development of locator programs) and/or an intranet or extranet system; obtaining sponsorships and endorsements; preparing and conducting sweepstakes and other promotions; developing, administering, and distributing coupons and gift cards, and the cost of product associated with the redemption of coupons and gift cards; developing and administering other customer loyalty programs; providing and procuring public relations services; conducting public relations activities; charitable donations; and membership fees in international, national, regional, and/or local trade or other associations or organizations. Franchisor also may use Fund monies to reimburse itself for its costs of personnel and other administrative and overhead costs associated with providing the services described in this Section.

9.3.2. The parties acknowledge that Franchisor owns all rights, and retains all copyrights, in all design and content developed using Fund monies, and that Franchisor will have sole control over the creative concepts, content, form, and media placement of all advertising and promotional materials developed with Fund monies, and the allocations of Fund monies to production, placement, and other costs. Franchisor will own all copyright in any works created using Fund monies. Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that Franchisor is not obligated to expend Fund monies for placement of advertising in Franchisee's trading area, or to ensure that the Franchised Business benefits directly or pro rata from the expenditure of Fund monies. We will not use Fund monies for creating or placing any advertisement that is principally a solicitation for new franchisees, but we may include in all advertising prepared using Fund monies (including Internet advertising) information concerning franchise opportunities, and a portion of Fund monies may be used to create and maintain one or more pages on our website devoted to advertising franchise opportunities and identifying and screening inquiries and applications submitted by franchise candidates. Any amounts contributed to the Fund that are not spent in the year they are collected will remain in the Fund for use during the next year. Franchisor has no fiduciary duty to Franchisee or to any other person with respect to the collection or expenditure of Fund monies. Upon Franchisee's reasonable request, Franchisor will provide Franchisee an annual statement of Fund contributions and expenditures.

9.3.3. Although the National Marketing Fund is intended to be perpetual, Franchisor may terminate the Fund at any time. The Fund will not be terminated, however, until all Fund monies have been spent as provided in this Section 9.3.2. or returned to the Fund contributors on the basis of their respective contributions. Any amounts contributed to the Fund that are not spent in the year they are collected will remain in the Fund for future expenditures.

9.4. Local Marketing Expenditure. Franchisor recommends, but does not require, that you spend 2% of Gross Revenues, on a quarterly basis, for local marketing purposes.

9.5. Advertising Cooperatives.

9.5.1. Franchisor may, from time to time, form local or regional advertising cooperatives ("**Advertising Cooperative**") to pay for the development, placement, and distribution of advertising for the benefit of Restaurants located in the geographic region served by the Advertising Cooperative. Any Advertising Cooperative established by Franchisor will be operated solely as a conduit for the collection and expenditure of Advertising Cooperative fees for the foregoing purposes.

9.5.2. If Franchisor forms an Advertising Cooperative for the region in which the Restaurant is located, you agree to participate in the Advertising Cooperative pursuant to the terms of this Section 9.5.

9.5.3. Franchisor has the exclusive right to create, dissolve, and merge each Advertising Cooperative created, in its discretion, and to create and amend the organizational and governing documents related thereto, provided that such documents shall: *(a)* operate by majority vote, with each NAUTICAL BOWLS (including Restaurants owned by Franchisor or its Affiliates) entitled to one vote; *(b)* entitle Franchisor to cast one vote (in addition to any votes it may be entitled to on account of its operation of Restaurants in the area served by the Advertising Cooperative); *(c)* permit the members of the Advertising Cooperative, by majority vote, to determine the amount of required contributions; and *(d)* provide that any funds left in the Cooperative at the time of dissolution shall be returned to the members in proportion to their contributions during the 12-month period immediately preceding termination.

9.5.4. You agree to be bound by all organizational and governing documents created by Franchisor and, at Franchisor's request, shall execute all documents necessary to evidence or affirm your agreement. The Advertising Cooperative shall begin operating on a date determined in advance by Franchisor.

9.5.5. No advertising or promotional plans or materials may be used by the Advertising Cooperative or furnished to its members without Franchisor's prior approval. All advertising plans and

materials must conform to the Standards and must be submitted to Franchisor for approval according to the procedures set forth in Section 9.1. of this Agreement.

9.6. Loyalty Programs, Prize Promotions, Meal Deals, and Promotional Literature.

9.6.1. You shall participate in and offer to your customers: (a) all customer loyalty and reward programs; (b) all contests, sweepstakes, and other prize promotions; and (c) all meal deals, which Franchisor may develop from time to time. Franchisor will communicate to you in writing the details of each such program, promotion, and meal deal, and you shall promptly display all point-of-sale advertising and promotion-related information at such places within the Restaurant as Franchisor may designate. You shall purchase and distribute all coupons, and other collateral merchandise (and only the coupons, and collateral merchandise) designated by Franchisor for use in connection with each such program, promotion, or meal deal.

9.6.2. If Franchisor develops or authorizes the sale of gift cards, loyalty cards, and/or customized promotional receipts, you shall acquire and use all computer software and hardware necessary to process their sale and to process purchases made using them and be solely responsible for the service charges related to such processing. All proceeds from the sale of all gift cards belong exclusively to Franchisor, and you shall remit the proceeds of such sales to Franchisor according to the procedures that Franchisor prescribes periodically. Franchisor shall reimburse or credit to you (at Franchisor's option) the redeemed value of gift cards and gift cards accepted as payment for products and services sold by the Restaurant. You shall be responsible for all processing fees associated with gift cards and gift cards.

9.6.3. You also shall display at the Restaurant all promotional literature and information as Franchisor may reasonably require from time to time. This may include, among other things, displaying signage or other literature containing information about the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise offering.

9.7. Participation in Marketing Programs. You shall participate in and offer to your customers: (a) all customer loyalty and reward programs; (b) all contests, sweepstakes, and other prize promotions; and (c) all meal deals, which Franchisor may develop from time to time. Franchisor will provide you the details of each such program, promotion, and meal deal, you shall promptly display all point-of-sale advertising and promotion-related information at such places within the Restaurant as Franchisor specifies. You shall purchase and distribute all coupons and collateral merchandise that Franchisor designates for use in connection with each such program, promotion, or meal deal.

9.8. Web Site. Franchisor shall maintain a web site on the Internet to, among other things, advertise and promote the NAUTICAL BOWLS System. Franchisor shall also maintain a presence of your Restaurant on the web site, subject to your continued compliance with the System and the provisions of this Agreement. You may not establish any independent web site on your behalf.

10. POS SYSTEM; ACCOUNTING AND RECORDS; TAXES

10.1. POS System. You shall acquire and use only the point-of-sale cash registers and computer systems and equipment that Franchisor prescribes for use by NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants (“**POS System**”), and adhere to Franchisor's requirements for use. Requirements may include, among other things, connection to remote servers, off-site electronic repositories, and high-speed Internet connections. Franchisor may, in its sole discretion, require you to add to your POS System memory, ports, and other accessories or peripheral equipment or additional, new, or substitute software, and replace or upgrade your POS System and software as Franchisor prescribes. Franchisor shall provide you 90 days advance written notice of any change to its POS System requirements. You shall acquire, install, and maintain such anti-virus and anti-spyware software as Franchisor requires and shall adopt and implement such Internet user policies as Franchisor may prescribe for purposes of avoiding, blocking, and eliminating viruses and other conditions that interfere with operation of the POS System.

10.2. Software. You shall: (a) use any software, system documentation manuals, and other proprietary materials that Franchisor requires in connection with the operation of the Restaurant; (b) input and maintain in your computer such data and information as Franchisor prescribes in the Manual, software, documentation, or otherwise; and (c) purchase or acquire new or upgraded software, system documentation manuals, and other materials at then-current prices whenever adopted system-wide. You shall acquire and use all online and mobile app ordering software Franchisor requires and pay all associated fees. You shall enter into all software license agreements, subscription agreements, “terms of use” agreements, and software maintenance agreements, in the form and manner Franchisor prescribes, and pay all fees imposed thereunder.

10.3. Independent Access. Franchisor may independently poll Gross Revenues and other information input and compiled by your POS System from a remote location. There is no limitation on Franchisor’s right to access this information.

10.4. Maintenance of Records. You shall prepare and preserve for at least five years from the date of preparation complete and accurate books, records, and accounts according to generally accepted accounting principles and in the form Franchisor prescribes.

10.5. Submission of Financial Statements and Tax Returns. No later than the tenth business day following the end of each Accounting Period, you shall provide to Franchisor a copy of the Accounting Period’s profit and loss statement. In addition, no later than March 30 of each calendar year, you shall provide to Franchisor: (a) a copy of the previous year’s annual profit and loss statements; (b) a copy of the previous year’s sales tax returns; and (c) a copy of your federal and state income tax returns for the previous year; provided, however, that if you are an individual franchisee, you may submit only those schedules to your personal tax returns which reflect the revenues and expenses of the Franchised Business.

10.6. Submission of Performance Reports. You shall accurately report to Franchisor the Restaurant’s Gross Revenues and such other financial information, as Franchisor may reasonably require, using the procedures that Franchisor prescribes periodically. Reports shall be due on the date prescribed by Franchisor, and shall be signed by an authorized representative, attesting to their accuracy. Within 30 days following the end of each fiscal quarter, you shall provide to Franchisor a copy of your profit and loss statements prepared according to generally accepted accounting principles and which accurately reflect your financial information for the applicable Accounting Periods. You also shall provide to Franchisor such other reports, computer back-up and other information that Franchisor may reasonably request.

10.7. Audit of Franchisee Records. Franchisor or its designated agent has the right to audit, examine, and copy your books, records, accounts, and business tax returns at any time. If an inspection or audit reveals underpayment of amounts owed to Franchisor, you shall immediately pay the understated amount with interest as provided in Section 4.9. If an audit or inspection reveals your understatement of Gross Revenues by 2% or more for any Accounting Period then, in addition to amounts due on the understatement and interest, you shall promptly reimburse Franchisor all costs and expenses that it incurred in connection with performing the audit or inspection (including travel, lodging and wage expenses, and attorneys’ and accountants’ fees).

10.8. Use of Financial Information in Franchise Disclosure Document. You acknowledge and agree that it may be in the best interest of the franchise system to share historical revenue and expense information with prospective franchisees. To that end, you hereby authorize Franchisor to publish information concerning the Restaurant’s Gross Revenues and other information reported to Franchisor in its franchise disclosure document.

10.9. Taxes. You shall promptly pay all taxes due and owing based on your operation of the Restaurant and the Franchised Business including, without limitation, sales taxes, income taxes, and property taxes.

11. INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR, INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION

11.1. Independent Contractor. The parties acknowledge and agree that you are operating the Franchised Business as an independent contractor. Nothing contained in this Agreement shall create or be construed to create a partnership, joint venture, or agency relationship between the parties. Neither party has any fiduciary obligations to the other or will be liable for the debts or obligations of the other. Neither party may bind the other, transact business in the other party's name or in any manner make any promises or representations on behalf of the other party, unless otherwise agreed between them. You shall conspicuously identify yourself and the Franchised Business in all dealings with your customers, contractors, suppliers, public officials, and others, as an independent franchisee of Franchisor, and shall place a conspicuous notice, in the form and at such place as Franchisor prescribes, notifying the public of such independent ownership.

11.2. Insurance Obligations.

11.2.1. You must maintain in full force and effect throughout the term of this Agreement that insurance which you determine is necessary or appropriate for liabilities caused by or occurring in connection with the development or operation of the franchise. Such insurance must include, at a minimum: (i) special/causes of loss coverage forms, including mechanical/equipment breakdown (previously called "All Risk coverage") on the franchise and all fixtures, equipment and other property used in the operation of the franchise, for full replacement value of the equipment and improvements; (ii) business interruption insurance covering a minimum 12 months loss of income, written on an actual loss sustained basis, including coverage for our monthly fees with us named as a loss payee with respect to those fees; (iii) comprehensive general liability insurance with minimum limits of at least \$1,000,000 per occurrence and \$1,000,000 general aggregate (including product liability and personal and advertising injury) and "Per Location" aggregate limits when multiple franchise locations are insured under one comprehensive general liability policy; (iv) automobile liability insurance, including hired and non-owned vehicle coverage with a minimum combined single limit of at least \$1,000,000 per claim; (v) workers' compensation and employer's liability insurance covering all of your employees where required by state statute; (vi) professional liability insurance, ~~including abuse and molestation~~, with a minimum limit of at least \$1,000,000 per occurrence; (vii) Commercial Umbrella/Excess Liability of at least \$1,000,000 per occurrence and \$1,000,000 general aggregate with "Per Location" aggregate limits when multiple franchise locations are insured under one comprehensive umbrella/excess liability policy (unless landlord requires a higher amount) (viii) cyber liability with minimum limits of at least \$25,000 per occurrence; (ix) medical expense coverage of at least \$1,000 any one person; (x) crime (employee dishonesty, theft and robbery) with minimum limits of at least \$10,000 per occurrence; (xi) employment practices liability with minimum limits of at least \$50,000 per occurrence and inclusive of both first and third party coverage; (xii) NAUTICAL BOWLS, Inc. and any entity with an insurable interest that we designate (the "**Additional Insureds**") must be named an additional insured on all liability policies required by this subparagraph to the extent each has an insurable interest; (xiii) each policy of insurance maintained pursuant to this Agreement must contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of the Additional Insureds; and (xiv) any other such insurance coverage's or amounts as required by law or other agreement related to the franchise.

11.2.2. All insurance policies must be written by an insurance company or companies satisfactory to us (generally, companies with an AM Best rating of A- or better). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Franchise Agreement, Franchisor will not unreasonably withhold its consent if a Franchisee desires to opt-out of any insurance plan established for the benefit of the System provided that the Franchisee provides a certificate of insurance confirming insurance coverage meeting the Franchisor's then-current minimum required insurance.

11.2.3. The required insurance coverage must commence as of the date the building lease or building purchase agreement has been signed for your Authorized Location. You must deliver to us at commencement and thereafter annually or at our request a proper certificate, endorsement, or other documentation as we

require evidencing the existence of such insurance coverage and your compliance with the provisions of this subparagraph. The insurance certificate or endorsement must show all required Additional Insureds (as noted in (xii) and (xiii) above) and provide that we will be given 30 days' prior written notice of material change in or termination or cancellation of the policy. We also may request copies of all policies. We may modify the required minimum limits from time to time and by written notice to you, as conditions require, to reflect changes in relevant circumstances, industry standards, experiences in the NAUTICAL BOWLS system, standards of liability and higher damage awards. If you do not procure and maintain the insurance coverage required by this Agreement, we have the right, but not the obligation, to procure insurance coverage and to charge the same to you, together with a reasonable fee for the expenses we incur in doing so, payable by you immediately upon notice.

You acknowledge that the foregoing minimum insurance requirements do not constitute advice or a representation that such coverages are necessary or adequate to protect you from losses in connection with the franchise. Nothing in this Agreement prevents or restricts you from acquiring and maintaining insurance with higher policy limits or lower deductibles than we require.

11.3. Indemnification. You shall indemnify and hold harmless to the fullest extent by law, Franchisor, its Affiliates, and their respective directors, officers, employees, shareholders, and agents, (collectively, “**Indemnitees**”) from any and all “**losses and expenses**” (as hereinafter defined) incurred in connection with any litigation or other form of adjudicatory procedure, claim, demand, investigation, or formal or informal inquiry (regardless of whether same is reduced to judgment) or any settlement thereof arising out of or related to your operation of the Franchised Business including, but not limited to, claims arising as a result of the maintenance and operation of vehicles or the Franchised Location (“**event**”), and regardless of whether same resulted from any strict or vicarious liability imposed by law on the Indemnitees; provided, however, that this indemnity shall not apply to any liability arising from the gross negligence of Indemnitees (except to the extent that joint liability is involved, in which event the indemnification provided in this Agreement shall extend to any finding of comparative negligence or contributory negligence attributable to you). For the purpose of this Section 11.3, the term “**losses and expenses**” includes compensatory, exemplary, or punitive damages; fines and penalties; attorneys' fees; experts' fees; court costs; costs associated with investigating and defending against claims; settlement amounts; judgments; compensation for damages to Franchisor's reputation and goodwill; and all other costs associated with any of the foregoing losses and expenses. You shall give Franchisor prompt notice of any event of which you are aware, for which indemnification is required, and, at your expense and risk, Franchisor may elect to assume (but under no circumstance is obligated to undertake) the defense and/or settlement thereof, provided that Franchisor will seek your advice and counsel. Any assumption by Franchisor shall not modify your indemnification obligation. Franchisor may, in its sole and absolute discretion, take such actions as it seems necessary and appropriate to investigate, defend, or settle any event or take other remedial or corrective actions with respect thereof as may be, in Franchisor's sole and absolute discretion, necessary for the protection of the indemnities or the System.

12. TRANSFER OF INTEREST

12.1. Transfer by Franchisor. Franchisor may transfer or assign all or any part of its rights or obligations under this Agreement to any person or legal entity. With respect to any assignment which results in the subsequent performance by the assignee of all of Franchisor's obligations under this Agreement, the assignee shall expressly assume and agree to perform such obligations and shall become solely responsible for all of Franchisor's obligations under this Agreement from the date of assignment. In addition, and without limitation to the foregoing, you expressly affirm and agree that Franchisor and/or its Affiliates may sell their assets, the Marks, the Copyrighted Works, or the System; may sell securities in a public offering or in a private placement; may merge, acquire other corporations, or be acquired by another corporation; and may undertake a refinancing, recapitalization, leveraged buy-out, or other economic or financial restructuring. With regard to any of the above sales, assignments and dispositions, you expressly and specifically waive any claims, demands or damages arising from or related to the loss of Franchisor's name,

the Marks (or any variation thereof), the Copyrighted Works and System and/or the loss of association with or identification of NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC as the franchisor under this Agreement. You specifically waive any and all other claims, demands or damages arising from or related to the foregoing merger, acquisition and other business combination activities including, without limitation, any claim of divided loyalty, breach of fiduciary duty, fraud, breach of contract or breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing. You agree that Franchisor has the right, now or in the future, to purchase, merge, acquire or affiliate with an existing competitive or non-competitive franchise network, chain or any other business regardless of the location of that chain's or business' facilities, and to operate, franchise or license those businesses and/or facilities as a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant operating under the Marks, the Copyrighted Works or any other marks following Franchisor's purchase, merger, acquisition or affiliation, regardless of the location of these facilities (which you acknowledge may be proximate to the Franchised Business).

12.2. Transfer by Individual Franchisee to Business Entity for Convenience. If you are an individual, you may transfer your interest in this Agreement to a Business Entity for convenience of operation within the first 12 months of this Agreement by signing Franchisor's standard form of assignment and assumption agreement if: **(a)** the Business Entity is formed solely for purposes of operating the Franchised Business; **(b)** you provide to Franchisor a copy of the Business Entity's formation and governing documents and a certificate of good standing from the jurisdiction under which the Business Entity was formed; **(c)** you sign a general release in favor of Franchisor and in the form Franchisor requires; **(d)** all holders of a legal or beneficial interest in the Business Entity has signed a Guaranty and Personal Undertaking in the form of Attachment D-1; and **(e)** you pay to Franchisor a Transfer Fee in the amount set forth in the Summary Pages.

12.3. Transfer Among Owners; Transfer of Non-Controlling Interest. If you are a Business Entity, your Owners may transfer their ownership interests in the Business Entity among each other, and may transfer up to a Non-Controlling Interest in the Business Entity to one or more third parties, if: **(a)** you have provided to Franchisor advance notice of the transfer, **(b)** Attachment C has been amended to reflect the new ownership; **(c)** each new Owner has signed a Guaranty and Personal Undertaking in the form of Attachment D-1; **(d)** each previous and/or new Owner has signed a general release in favor of Franchisor and in the form Franchisor requires; and **(e)** you pay to Franchisor a Transfer Fee in the amount set forth in the Summary Pages.

12.4. Transfer of Agreement; Transfer of the Franchised Business; Transfer of Controlling Interest. All other transfers (including any sale or transfer of your interest in this Agreement, the sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Restaurant, and the sale of a Controlling Interest in you if you are a Business Entity) require Franchisor's prior written consent. Franchisor will not unreasonably withhold its consent to a transfer, but may condition its consent on satisfaction of any or all of the following:

12.4.1. Your written request for consent in writing and delivery of a copy of the proposed transfer agreements, including sale terms, at least 30 days prior to the proposed transfer, and Franchisor's determination, in its sole and reasonable discretion, that the terms of the sale will not materially and adversely affect the post transfer viability of the Franchised Business.

12.4.2. The transferee has demonstrated to Franchisor's satisfaction that the transferee meets Franchisor's then-current educational, managerial and business standards; possesses a good moral character, business reputation and credit rating; has the aptitude and ability to operate the Franchised Business; and has sufficient equity capital to operate the Franchised Business (which condition shall be presumed if the transferee's net worth is equal to or exceeds your net worth at the time of transfer, excluding the value of the Franchised Business);

12.4.3. All of your accrued monetary obligations and all other outstanding obligations to Franchisor, its Affiliates, and third-party suppliers shall be up to date, fully paid and satisfied, and you must

be in full compliance with this Agreement and any other agreements between you and Franchisor, its Affiliates and your suppliers;

12.4.4. You or the transferee shall have agreed to refurbish the Restaurant premises so that it meets Franchisor's image requirements for new NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants;

12.4.5. You and each Owner have executed a general release and covenant not to sue, in a form satisfactory to Franchisor, of any and all claims against Franchisor and its Affiliates and their respective officers, directors, shareholders, agents and employees in their corporate and individual capacities, including, without limitation, claims arising under federal, state and local laws, rules and ordinances and any other matters incident to the termination of this Agreement or to the transfer of your interest herein or to the transfer of your ownership of all or any part of the Franchise; provided, however, that any release will not be inconsistent with any state law regulating franchising;

12.4.6. You agree to remain liable for all direct and indirect obligations to Franchisor in connection with the Franchised Business prior to the effective date of the transfer, shall continue to remain responsible for your obligations of nondisclosure, noncompetition and indemnification as provided elsewhere in this Agreement, and all other obligations that survive termination, expiration or transfer, and shall execute any and all instruments reasonably requested by Franchisor to further evidence such obligation;

12.4.7. You or the transferee shall pay to Franchisor its then-current initial franchisee fee;

12.4.8. The transferee's execution of Franchisor's then-current form of franchise agreement, the terms of which may be materially different than the terms of this Agreement and may include, among other things, a different percentage royalty fee and different advertising obligations. The term of such agreement shall be the remaining term of this Agreement at the time of transfer.

12.4.9. If the transferee is a Business Entity, then the transferee's Owners each shall sign Franchisor's standard form of Guaranty and Personal Undertaking;

12.4.10. You or the transferee must provide Franchisor with a copy of the agreements of purchase and sale between the transferor and the transferee. The economic terms of the transfer may not materially and adversely affect, in Franchisor's sole judgment, the post transfer viability of the Franchised Business;

12.4.11. The transferee shall have complied with Franchisor's then-current initial training requirements;

12.4.12. You have complied with the requirements set forth in Section 12.8.; and

12.4.13. If Franchisor introduced the buyer to you, you have paid all fees due Franchisor under its then-current franchise resale policy or program.

12.5. Transfers Void. You understand and acknowledge that Franchisor has entered into this Agreement in reliance on your business skill, financial capacity, personal character, and experience. Accordingly, you may not sell or transfer your interest in this Agreement or the assets of the Franchised Business (except in the ordinary course of your business) without Franchisor's prior written consent. In addition, if you are a Franchised Business Entity, no Owner may transfer or assign his or her equity interest in the Franchised Business Entity without Franchisor's prior written consent. Any purported transfer, by operation of law or otherwise, made without Franchisor's prior written consent will be considered null and void and will be considered a material breach of this Agreement.

12.6. Security Interest. You may grant a security interest in this Agreement, or the franchise represented by this Agreement only to the limited extent permitted by Section 9-408 of the Uniform Commercial Code. Any such security interest may only attach to an interest in the proceeds of the operation of the Franchised Business and may not entitle or permit the secured party to take possession of or operate the Franchised Business or to transfer your interest in the franchise without Franchisor's consent.

12.7. Public Offerings. If you are a Business Entity and you intend to issue equity interests pursuant to a public or private offering, you shall first obtain Franchisor's written consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. You must provide to Franchisor for its review a copy of all offering materials (whether or not such materials are required by applicable securities laws) at least 60 days prior to such documents being filed with any government agency or distributed to investors. No offering shall imply (by use of the Marks or otherwise) that Franchisor is participating in an underwriting, issuance or offering of your securities, and Franchisor's review of any offering shall be limited to ensuring compliance with the terms of this Agreement. Franchisor may condition its approval on satisfaction of any or all of the conditions set forth in Section 12.4 and on execution of an indemnity agreement, in a form prescribed by Franchisor, by you and any other participants in the offering. For each proposed offering, you shall pay to Franchisor a retainer in an amount determined by Franchisor, which Franchisor shall use to reimburse itself for the reasonable costs and expenses it incurs (including, without limitation, attorneys' fees and accountants' fees) in connection with reviewing the proposed offering.

12.8. Right of First Refusal.

12.8.1. If you receive a bona fide offer to purchase your interest in this Agreement or all or substantially all of the assets of the Franchised Business in connection with the transferee's execution of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchise Agreement, or if any Owner receives a bona fide offer to purchase his or her equity interests in you, and if you or such Owner wishes to accept such offer, you or the Owner must deliver to Franchisor written notification of the offer and, except as otherwise provided herein, Franchisor shall have the option, exercisable within 30 days after receipt of such written notification, to purchase the seller's interest on the same terms and conditions offered by the third party. If the bona fide offer provides for the exchange of assets other than cash or cash equivalents, the bona fide offer shall include the fair market value of the assets and you shall submit with the notice an appraisal prepared by a qualified independent third party evidencing the fair market value of such assets as of the date of the offer.

12.8.2. Any material change in the terms of any offer prior to closing shall constitute a new offer subject to the same right of first refusal by Franchisor as in the case of an initial offer. If Franchisor elects to purchase the seller's interest, closing on such purchase must occur by the later of: (a) the closing date specified in the third-party offer; or (b) within 60 days from the date of notice to the seller of Franchisor's election to purchase. Franchisor's failure to exercise the option described in this Section 12.8, shall not constitute a waiver of any of the transfer conditions set forth in this Article 12.

12.9. Transfer Upon Death or Incapacitation. Upon the death or permanent incapacity (mental or physical) of any person with an interest in this Agreement, in you, or in all or substantially all of the assets of the Franchised Business, the executor, administrator, or personal representative of such person shall transfer such interest to a third party approved by Franchisor within six months after such death or mental incapacity. Such transfers, including, without limitation, transfers by devise or inheritance, shall be subject to the same conditions as a lifetime transfer, except that the transfer fee shall be waived. In the case of transfer by devise or inheritance, however, if the heirs or beneficiaries of any such person are unable to meet the conditions of this Section 12.9, the executor, administrator, or personal representative of the decedent shall transfer the decedent's interest to another party approved by Franchisor within six months, which disposition shall be subject to all the terms and conditions for transfer contained in this Agreement. If the interest is not disposed of within such period, Franchisor may, at its option, terminate this Agreement, pursuant to Section 13.5.

12.10. Non-Waiver of Claims. Franchisor's consent to a transfer shall not constitute a waiver of any claims it may have against the transferring party, and it will not be deemed a waiver of Franchisor's right to demand strict compliance with any of the terms of this Agreement, or any other agreement to which Franchisor's and the transferee are parties, by the transferee.

13. DEFAULT AND TERMINATION

13.1. Termination In the Event of Bankruptcy or Insolvency. You will be in default under this Agreement, and all rights granted to you in this Agreement shall automatically terminate without notice, if you become insolvent or make a general assignment for the benefit of creditors; if a petition in bankruptcy is filed by you or such a petition is filed and against you and you do not oppose it; if you are adjudicated as bankrupt or insolvent; if a bill in equity or other proceeding for the appointment of a receiver for you or other custodian for your business or assets is filed and consented to by you; if a receiver or other custodian (permanent or temporary) of your assets or property, or any part thereof, is appointed by any court of competent jurisdiction; if proceedings for a composition with creditors under any state or federal law is instituted by or against you; if a final judgment remains unsatisfied or of record for 30 days or longer (unless a *supersedeas* bond is filed); if you are dissolved; if execution is levied against your business or property; if judicial, non-judicial or administrative proceedings to foreclose any lien or mortgage against the Franchised Location premises or assets or equipment is instituted against you and not dismissed within 30 days; or if the real or personal property of the Franchised Business is sold after levy thereupon by any sheriff, marshal, or constable.

13.2. Termination with Notice and Without Opportunity to Cure. Franchisor has the right to terminate this Agreement, which termination will become effective upon delivery of notice without opportunity to cure if: **(a)** your Key Person fails to successfully complete training; **(b)** you fail to open the Restaurant for business by the Opening Date or within twelve months after the Effective Date, whichever occurs sooner; **(c)** you abandon the Franchised Business (which will be presumed if you cease operations for three consecutive days or more); **(d)** you lose any license required to operate the Franchised Business or you lose your right to occupy the Restaurant premises; **(e)** you or any Owner is convicted of, or pleads no contest to, a felony, a crime involving moral turpitude, or any other crime or offense that Franchisor believes is reasonably likely to have an adverse effect on the System; **(f)** there is any transfer or attempted transfer in violation of Article 12 of this Agreement; **(g)** you or any Owner fails to comply with the confidentiality or noncompete covenants in this Agreement; **(h)** you or any Owner has made any material misrepresentations in connection with your franchise application; **(i)** you fail to comply with notification requirements set forth in Sections 6.1.(d) or (e) concerning investigations and Crisis Management Events; **(j)** you understate any payment to Franchisor by 2% or more, or understate any such payment in any amount, twice in any two-year period; **(k)** if an imminent threat or danger to public health or safety results from the operation of the Franchised Business; **(l)** you knowingly maintain false books or records or submit any false reports or statements to Franchisor; **(m)** you offer unauthorized products or services from the Restaurant premises or in conjunction with the Marks or Copyrighted Works; **(n)** purchase items for which Franchisor has identified Approved Suppliers from an unapproved source; **(o)** failure to pass two or more quality assurance inspections within any rolling 12-month period; or **(p)** Franchisor delivers to you three or more written notices of default pursuant to this Article 13 within any rolling 12-month period, regardless of whether or not the defaults described in such notices ultimately were cured.

13.3. Termination with 10-Day Cure Period. Franchisor has the right to terminate this Agreement, which termination will become effective upon delivery of written notice of termination, if you fail to cure the following defaults within 10 days after delivery of written notice: **(a)** failure to obtain or maintain required insurance coverage; **(b)** failure to pay any amounts due to Franchisor; **(c)** you fail to pay any amounts due to your trade creditors (unless such amount is subject to a bona fide dispute); **(d)** you fail to pay any amounts for which Franchisor has advanced funds for or on your behalf, or upon which Franchisor is acting as guarantor of your obligations; **(e)** your violation of any provision of this Agreement concerning the use and protection of the Marks or Copyrighted Works; or **(f)** your violation of any provision of this Agreement concerning the preparation, service, appearance or quality of NAUTICAL BOWLS products.

13.4. Termination with 30-Day Cure Period. Except as otherwise provided in this Article 13, Franchisor has the right to terminate this Agreement, which termination will become effective upon delivery of written notice of termination, if you fail to cure any curable default within 30 days after delivery of written notice.

13.5. Termination Related to Death or Permanent Incapacity. Franchisor has the right to terminate this Agreement if an approved transfer as required by Section 12.9 is not completed within the required time frame following a death or permanent incapacity (mental or physical).

13.6. Cross-Default. Any default under any agreement between you and Franchisor or its Affiliates, and failure to cure within any applicable cure period, shall be considered a default under this Agreement and shall provide an independent basis for termination of this Agreement.

13.7. Step In Rights. To prevent any interruption of the business of the Restaurant, and any injury to the goodwill and reputation to the System which may be caused thereby, you hereby authorize Franchisor, and Franchisor shall have the right, but not the obligation, to operate the Restaurant on your behalf for as long as Franchisor deems necessary and practical, and without waiver of any other rights or remedies Franchisor may have under this Agreement, in the event that: (a) your Key Person is absent or incapacitated by reason of illness, death or disability and, therefore, in Franchisor's sole determination, you are not able to operate the Restaurant in full compliance with this Agreement; (b) any allegation or claim is made against you or any of your principals, or the operation of the Restaurant, involving or relating to fraudulent, deceptive or illegal practices or activities; or (c) Franchisor determines that operational problems require Franchisor to operate your Restaurant for a period of time to maintain the operation of the business as a going concern. If Franchisor undertakes to operate the Restaurant pursuant to this Section 13.7, Franchisor shall have the right to collect and pay from the revenues of the Restaurant all operating expenses including, without limitation, Royalty Fees, Advertising Fees, and employee salaries, and further shall be entitled to collect, as compensation for its efforts, a reasonable management fee of up to 10% of Gross Revenue. You shall indemnify and hold harmless Franchisor from any and all claims arising from the alleged acts and omissions of Franchisor and its representatives. Nothing contained herein shall prevent Franchisor from exercising any other right which Franchisor may have under this Agreement, including, without limitation, termination.

13.8. Additional Remedies. In addition to, or in lieu of, termination of this Agreement, in its sole discretion, Franchisor may require the Restaurant be closed during any cure period relating to a default based on public health and safety concerns.

14. OBLIGATIONS UPON TERMINATION OR EXPIRATION

14.1. Cease Use of Marks; Copyrighted Works; Cancellation of Fictitious Name; Assignment of E-mail Addresses, URLs, Domain Names, Internet Listings. You shall immediately cease all use of the Marks, Copyrighted Works, and Confidential Information. You shall cancel any assumed name registration containing the Marks. You shall, at Franchisor's option and request, assign to Franchisor all rights to all e-mail addresses, URLs, domain names, online directory listings, and social media accounts related to the Franchised Business. You hereby appoint Franchisor as your attorney-in-fact with full power and authority for the sole purpose of assigning these rights to Franchisor. This appointment shall be deemed to be coupled with an interest and shall continue in full force and effect until the termination or expiration of this Agreement.

14.2. Assignment of Lease; De-Identification. At Franchisor's request, you shall assign to Franchisor or its designee your interest in the lease, including your interest in all leasehold improvements, without additional compensation. If Franchisor does not request assignment of the lease before or as of the date of expiration or termination of this Agreement, then within 10 days after termination or expiration of this Agreement, you shall modify the Restaurant premises (including, without limitation, the changing of the color scheme and other distinctive design features, and the changing of and assigning to Franchisor of, the telephone numbers) as may be necessary to distinguish the appearance of the Franchised Location from that of other NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurants, and shall make such specific additional changes to the Franchised Location as Franchisor may reasonably request for that purpose. If you fail de-identify the Restaurant premises within a reasonable time, you hereby grant a license to Franchisor's personnel and designees to enter upon the Restaurant premises and take all actions necessary to de-identify the premises

as a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant including, without limitation, removing all signage, advertising materials, trade dress, displays, proprietary equipment, and Proprietary Products, and any other items which display the Marks or reflect Franchisor's trade dress. Franchisor may charge a reasonable fee for its services; you agree to pay the fee on demand and to reimburse Franchisor for all de-identification related costs that it incurred.

14.3. Return of Manuals and Other Confidential Information. You shall immediately deliver to Franchisor the Manuals and all other manuals, records, correspondence, files, and any instructions containing Confidential Information relating to the operation of the Franchised Business which are in your possession; and all copies thereof (all of which are acknowledged to be the property of Franchisor).

14.4. Franchisor's Right to Purchase Fixtures and Tangible Assets. Franchisor has the option to purchase your interest (if any) in any or all of the Restaurant's leasehold improvements, furniture, fixtures, equipment, inventory, supplies, and interior and exterior signs for a purchase price equal to the lesser of your cost or then-current fair market value, to be determined by a qualified independent third-party of Franchisor's choosing, and may set off against the purchase price any amounts that you owe to Franchisor. Franchisor shall exercise its option by written notice to you delivered before or within 30 days after the date of expiration or termination of this Agreement.

15. COVENANTS

15.1. Non-Competition During Term of Agreement. You and each Owner acknowledge that you and each Owner will receive valuable specialized training and Confidential Information, including, without limitation, information regarding the operational, sales, promotional, and marketing methods and techniques and trade secrets of Franchisor and the System. You and each Owner covenant and agree that during the term of this Agreement, except as otherwise approved in writing by Franchisor, you and, if applicable, such Owner, shall not, either directly or indirectly, for yourselves, or through, on behalf of, or in conjunction with any person, or legal entity:

15.1.1. Divert or attempt to divert any present or prospective customer of the Franchised Business to any competitor, by direct or indirect inducement or otherwise, or do or perform, directly or indirectly, any other act injurious or prejudicial to the goodwill associated with the Marks and the System.

15.1.2. Employ or seek to employ any person who is or has been within the previous 30 days employed by Franchisor or an Affiliate of Franchisor as a salaried managerial employee, or otherwise directly or indirectly induce such person to leave his or her employment.

15.1.3. Own, maintain, advise, operate, engage in, be employed by, make loans to, invest in, provide any assistance to, or have any interest in (as owner or otherwise) or relationship or association with, any Competitive Business, other than a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant operated pursuant to a then-currently effective franchise agreement with Franchisor at any location within the United States, its territories or commonwealths, or any other country, province, state or geographic area in which Franchisor or its Affiliates have used, sought registration of or registered the Marks or similar marks or operate or license others to operate a business under the Marks or similar marks.

15.2. Non-Competition After Expiration or Termination of Agreement. For a continuous two-year period commencing upon a transfer permitted under Section 12 of this Agreement, expiration of this Agreement (without renewal), or termination of this Agreement (regardless of the cause for termination), you shall not either directly or indirectly, for yourselves, or through, on behalf of, or in conjunction with any person, persons, or legal entity, own, maintain, advise, operate, engage in, be employed by, make loans to, or have any interest in or relationship or association with any Competitive Business, other than a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant operated pursuant to a then-currently effective franchise agreement with Franchisor, and (a) is, or is intended to be, located at the location of the former Restaurant; (b) within a 25-mile radius of the Restaurant; or (c) within a 25-mile radius of any other NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant in existence or under development at the time of such expiration, termination or transfer. If any Owner ceases to be an

Owner of the franchisee for any reason during the franchise time, the foregoing covenant shall apply to the departing Owner for a two-year period beginning on the date such person ceases to meet the definition of an Owner. The obligations described in this Section 15.2 shall be tolled during any period of noncompliance.

15.3. Additional Provisions. The parties acknowledge and agree that Franchisor has the right, in its sole discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant set forth in Sections 15.1 and 15.2, or any portion thereof, without your consent or the consent of any Owner, effective immediately upon delivery of written notice to the affected party; and you and each Owner agree that such person shall comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified. You and each Owner expressly agree that the existence of any claims you may have against Franchisor, whether or not arising from this Agreement, shall not constitute a defense to Franchisor's enforcement of the covenants in this Article 15. You agree to pay all costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees) incurred by Franchisor in connection with the enforcement of this Article 15.

15.4. Covenants from Individuals. Each individual who attends Franchisor's training program and other key employees designated by Franchisor shall be required to sign a confidentiality and noncompete agreement substantially in the form attached as Attachment D-2 to this Agreement. You shall be responsible for ensuring compliance with such agreement.

15.5. Breach of Covenants Causes Irreparable Injury. You acknowledge that your violation of any covenant of this Article 15 would result in irreparable injury to Franchisor for which no adequate remedy at law may be available, and you consent to the issuance of, and agree to pay all court costs and reasonable attorneys' fees incurred by Franchisor in obtaining, without the posting of any bond, an *ex parte* or other order for injunctive or other legal or equitable relief with respect to such conduct or action.

15.6. Exception for Publicly Held Companies. The foregoing restrictions shall not apply to your ownership or any Owner's ownership of less than a 5% beneficial interest in the outstanding equity securities of any company registered under the Securities Act of 1933 or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

15.7. Improvements. If you, your employees, or Owners develop any new concept, process or improvement in the operation or promotion of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant ("Improvement"), you agree to promptly notify Franchisor and provide Franchisor with all necessary related information, without compensation. Any such Improvement shall become Franchisor's sole property and Franchisor shall be the sole owner of all related patents, patent applications, and other intellectual property rights. You and your Owners hereby assign to Franchisor any rights you or your Owners may have or acquire in the Improvements, including the right to modify the Improvement, and waive and/or release all rights of restraint and moral rights therein and thereto. You and your Owners agree to assist Franchisor in obtaining and enforcing the intellectual property rights to any such Improvement in any and all countries and further agree to execute and provide Franchisor with all necessary documentation for obtaining and enforcing such rights. You and your Owners hereby irrevocably designate and appoint Franchisor as agent and attorney-in-fact for you and for them to execute and file any such documentation and to do all other lawful acts to further the prosecution and issuance of patents or other intellectual property right related to any such Improvement. In the event that the foregoing provisions of this Section 15.7 are found to be invalid or otherwise unenforceable, you and your Owners hereby grant to Franchisor a worldwide, perpetual, non-exclusive, fully-paid license to use and sublicense the use of the Improvement to the extent such use or sublicense would, absent this Agreement, directly or indirectly infringe on you or your Owners' rights therein.

16. REPRESENTATIONS

16.1. Representations of Franchisor. Franchisor represents and warrants that: (a) Franchisor is duly organized and validly existing under the law of the state of its formation; (b) Franchisor is duly qualified

and authorized to do business in each jurisdiction in which its business activities or the nature of the properties it owns requires such qualification; and (c) the execution of this Agreement and the performance of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are within Franchisor's corporate power and have been duly authorized.

16.2. Representations of Franchisee.

16.2.1. You represent and warrant that the information set forth in Attachment C, incorporated by reference hereto, is accurate and complete in all material respects. You shall notify Franchisor in writing within 10 days of any change in the information set forth in Attachment C. You further represent to Franchisor that: (a) you are duly organized and validly existing under the law of the state of your formation; (b) you are duly qualified and authorized to do business in each jurisdiction in which your business activities or the nature of the properties you own require such qualification; and (c) your corporate charter or written partnership or limited liability company agreement, as applicable, will at all times provide that your activities are confined exclusively to the operation of the Franchised Business. You warrant and represent that neither you nor any of your Affiliates or Owners own, operate or have any financial or beneficial interest in any business that is the same as or similar to a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant; and the execution of this Agreement and the performance of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are within your corporate power, or if you are a partnership or a limited liability company, are permitted under your written partnership or limited liability company agreement and have been duly authorized.

16.2.2. You acknowledge that you have conducted an independent investigation of the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise opportunity, and recognize that the business venture contemplated by this Agreement involves business risks and that its success will be largely dependent on your ability as an independent business person.

16.2.3. You represent that neither Franchisor nor its agents or representations have made any representations, and you have not relied on representations made by Franchisor or its agents or representatives, concerning actual or potential sales, expenses or profit of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, except for any information that may have been contained in Item 19 of the franchise disclosure document, delivered to you in connection with your purchase of a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise.

16.2.4. You acknowledge that you have received a complete copy of Franchisor's Franchise Disclosure Document at least 14 calendar days before you signed this Agreement or paid any consideration to Franchisor for your franchise rights.

16.2.5. You acknowledge that you have read and that you understand the terms of this Agreement and its attachments, and that you have had ample time and opportunity to consult with an attorney or business advisor of your choice about the potential risks and benefits of entering into this Agreement.

16.2.6. You represent that neither your property nor any interest in your property, nor the property of any of your Owners, officers, directors, managers, partners, agents or employees, or their respective interests therein, have been blocked pursuant to Executive Order 13224 of September 23, 2001, pertaining to persons who commit, threaten to commit, or support terrorism ("**Blocked Persons**"). You represent and warrant to Franchisor that you will not accept money from or employ any Blocked Person.

17. **NOTICES**

17.1. Notices. All notices or demands shall be in writing and shall be served in person, by Express Mail, by certified mail; by private overnight delivery; or email. Service shall be deemed conclusively made: (a) at the time of service, if personally served; (b) 24 hours (exclusive of weekends and national holidays) after deposit in the United States mail, properly addressed and postage prepaid, if served by Express Mail; (c) upon the earlier of actual receipt or three calendar days after deposit in the United States mail, properly addressed and postage prepaid, return receipt requested, if served by certified mail; (d) 24 hours after delivery by the party giving the notice, statement or demand if by private overnight delivery; and (e) at the

time of transmission by email. Notices and demands shall be given to the respective parties at the addresses set forth on the Summary Pages, unless and until a different address has been designated by written notice to the other party. Either party may change its address for the purpose of receiving notices, demands and other communications as in this Agreement by providing a written notice given in the manner aforesaid to the other party.

18. CONSTRUCTION

18.1. Franchisee Representations.

18.1.1. You represent and warrant to Franchisor that, except for the information contained in Item 19 of the Franchise Disclosure Document delivered to you in connection with your entering into this Agreement, neither Franchisor nor any of its agents have made any representations or promises to you about the actual or potential earnings or profit of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, and that you are entering into this Agreement relying solely on your own independent due diligence.

18.1.2. You represent and warrant to Franchisor that, in entering into this Agreement, you have not relied on any representation or promise that Franchisor or any of its agents made to you about the actual or potential earnings or profit of a NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, other than information contained in Item 19 of the Franchise Document delivered to you in connection with your entering into this Agreement.

18.2. Integration and Merger. This Agreement represents the entire, fully integrated agreement between the parties and supersedes all other negotiations, agreements, representations, and covenants, oral or written, concerning the subject matter hereof. Except for Franchisor's unilateral rights under this Agreement, no amendment, change, or variance from this Agreement shall be binding on either party unless mutually agreed to by the parties and executed by their authorized officers or agents in writing. Nothing in this Agreement is intended to disclaim any representation made in the franchise disclosure document delivered to you in connection with your purchase of a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise.

18.3. No Waiver. No waiver or modification of this Agreement or of any covenant, condition, or limitation herein contained shall be valid unless the same is made in writing and duly executed by the party to be charged therewith. No evidence of any waiver or modification shall be offered or received in evidence in any proceeding, arbitration, or litigation between the parties arising out of or affecting this Agreement, or the rights or obligations of any party hereunder, unless such waiver or modification is in writing, duly executed as aforesaid.

18.4. Severability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision of this Agreement.

18.5. Survival of Terms. Any provision or covenant of this Agreement which expressly or by its nature imposes obligations beyond the expiration or termination of this Agreement shall survive such expiration or termination.

18.6. Definitions and Captions. Unless otherwise defined in this body of this Agreement, capitalized terms have the meaning ascribed to them in Attachment A ("**Glossary of Additional Terms**"). All captions in this Agreement are intended for the convenience of the parties, and none shall be deemed to affect the meaning or construction of any provision of this Agreement.

18.7. Persons Bound. This Agreement shall be binding on the parties and their respective successors and assigns. Each Owner shall execute the Guaranty and Personal Undertaking attached as Attachment D-1. Failure or refusal to do so shall constitute a breach of this Agreement. You and each Owner shall be joint and severally liable for each person's obligations hereunder and under the Guaranty and Personal Undertaking.

18.8. Rules of Construction. Neither this Agreement nor any uncertainty or ambiguity in this Agreement shall be construed or resolved against the drafter of this Agreement, whether under any rule of construction or otherwise. Terms used in this Agreement shall be construed and interpreted according to their ordinary

meaning. If any provision of this Agreement is susceptible to two or more meanings, one of which would render the provision enforceable and the other(s) which would render the provision unenforceable, the provision shall be given the meaning that renders it enforceable.

18.9. Timing. Time is of the essence with respect to all provisions in this Agreement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if performance of either party is delayed on account of a Force Majeure, the applicable deadline for performance shall be extended for a period commensurate with the Force Majeure, but not to exceed 12 months.

18.10. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all of which together shall constitute one agreement.

19. APPLICABLE LAW; DISPUTE RESOLUTION; REPRESENTATIONS

19.1. Choice of Law. This Agreement and all claims arising out of or related to this Agreement or the parties' relationship created hereby shall be construed under and governed by the laws of the State of Texas (without giving effect to any conflict of laws).

19.2. Mediation.

19.2.1. The parties acknowledge that during the term and any extensions of this Agreement certain disputes may arise that the parties are unable to resolve, but that may be resolvable through mediation. To facilitate such resolution, Franchisor, you, and each Owner agree to submit to mediation any claim, controversy or dispute between you and Franchisor (and either party's respective Affiliates) including, without limitation, claims arising out of or related to: (a) this Agreement or any other agreement between Franchisor and you, (b) Franchisor's relationship with you, or (c) the validity of this Agreement or any other agreement between Franchisor and you, before bringing such claim, controversy or dispute in a court or before any other tribunal.

19.2.2. The mediation shall be conducted by a mediator agreed upon by Franchisor and you and, failing such agreement within not more than 15 days after either party has notified the other of its desire to seek mediation, by the American Arbitration Association or any successor organization ("AAA") in accordance with its rules governing mediation. Mediation shall be held at the offices of the AAA in the city in which Franchisor maintains its principal place of business at the time the mediation is initiated. The costs and expenses of mediation, including the compensation and expenses of the mediator (but excluding attorneys' fees incurred by either party), shall be borne by the parties equally.

19.2.3. If the parties are unable to resolve the claim, controversy or dispute within 90 days after the mediator has been chosen, then, unless such time period is extended by written agreement of the parties, either party may bring a legal proceeding pursuant to Section 19.3. The parties agree that statements made during such mediation proceeding will not be admissible for any purpose in any subsequent legal proceeding.

19.2.4. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 19.2, the parties' agreement to mediate shall not apply to controversies, disputes or claims related to or based on amounts owed to Franchisor pursuant to this Agreement, your misuse or infringement of the Marks or Copyrighted Works, or your misuse of Franchisor's Confidential Information. Moreover, regardless of this mediation agreement, Franchisor and you each have the right in a proper case to seek temporary restraining orders and temporary or preliminary injunctive relief in any court of competent jurisdiction.

19.3. Venue. Any action brought by either party against the other in any court, whether federal or state, shall be brought and maintained exclusively in the state or federal court situation the judicial district in which Franchisor maintains its principal place of business at the time the action is initiated, and the parties hereby waive all questions of personal jurisdiction or venue for the purpose of carrying out this provision. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Franchisor shall have the right to seek injunctive relief from any court of competent jurisdiction.

19.4. Nonexclusivity of Remedy. No right or remedy conferred upon or reserved to Franchisor or you by this Agreement is intended to be, nor shall be deemed, exclusive of any other right or remedy in this Agreement or by law or equity provided or permitted, but each shall be cumulative of every other right or remedy.

19.5. WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL. EACH PARTY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING, OR COUNTERCLAIM, WHETHER AT LAW OR IN EQUITY, BROUGHT BY EITHER OF THEM AGAINST THE OTHER, WHETHER OR NOT THERE ARE OTHER PARTIES IN SUCH ACTION OR PROCEEDING.

19.6. WAIVER OF PUNITIVE DAMAGES. THE PARTIES HEREBY WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW ANY RIGHT TO OR CLAIM OF ANY PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES AGAINST THE OTHER AND AGREE THAT IN THE EVENT OF A DISPUTE BETWEEN THEM EACH SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE RECOVERY OF ANY ACTUAL DAMAGES SUSTAINED BY IT.

19.7. Contractual Limitations Period. No legal action or proceeding may be brought against Franchisor or its officers, directors, agents, or employees, for any claim or cause of action (whether sounding in contract, tort, or otherwise) unless such action or proceeding is instituted within two years and one day from the date the claim or cause of action accrued. This provision is intended to shorten any applicable statute of limitations to the extent permitted by law.

19.8. Attorneys' Fees. If either party commences a legal action against the other party arising out of or in connection with this Agreement, the prevailing party shall be entitled to have and recover from the other party its reasonable attorneys' fees and costs of suit.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Agreement to be effective on the Effective Date set forth above.

FRANCHISEE: (For an entity)

Name of Entity: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISOR:

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
a Texas limited liability company

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISEE: (For an individual)

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT A
GLOSSARY OF ADDITIONAL TERMS**

“**Account**” means your commercial bank operating account.

“**Affiliate**” means an affiliate of a named person identified as any person or entity that is controlled by, controlling or under common control with such named person.

“**Agreement**” means the Franchise Agreement.

“**Business Day**” means each day other than a Saturday, Sunday, U.S. holiday or any other day on which the Federal Reserve is not open for business in the United States.

“**Business Entity**” means any person with the power to enter into contracts, other than a natural person. The term includes a corporation, limited liability company, limited partnership, and trust.

“**Captive Market**” means venues with a captive market of foot traffic, such as military bases, airports, travel plazas, enclosed shopping malls, school campuses, and family entertainment venues.

“**Competitive Business**” means (a) any health food restaurant or (b) any quick-service or fast casual restaurant that derives more than 20% of its business from the sale of superfood smoothie bowls and healthy beverages, except for a NAUTICAL BOWLS business operated under a valid franchise agreement with Franchisor.

“**Confidential Information**” means all trade secrets, the Standards, and other elements of the System; all customer information; all information contained in the Manuals; Franchisor’s proprietary recipes and standards and specifications for product preparation, packaging and service; financial information; marketing data; vendor and supplier information; all other knowledge, trade secrets, or know-how concerning the methods of operation of the Franchised Business which may be communicated to you, or of which you may be apprised, by virtue of their operation under the terms of the Franchise Agreement, and all other information that Franchisor designates.

“**Controlling Interest**” means: (a) if you are a corporation or a limited liability company, that the Owners, either individually or cumulatively (i) directly or indirectly own at least 51% of the shares of each class of the developer entity’s issued and outstanding capital stock or membership units, as applicable; and (ii) are entitled, under its governing documents and under any agreements among the Owners, to cast a sufficient number of votes to require such entity to take or omit to take any action which such entity is required to take or omit to take under this Agreement; or (b) if you are a partnership, that the Owners (i) own at least 51% interest in the operating profits and operating losses of the partnership as well as at least 51% ownership interest in the partnership (and at least 51% interest in the shares of each class of capital stock of any corporate general partner); and (ii) are entitled under its partnership agreement or applicable law to act on behalf of the partnership without the approval or consent of any other partner or be able to cast a sufficient number of votes to require the partnership to take or omit to take any action which the partnership is required to take or omit to take under this Agreement. Any interest less than 51% of the corporation, limited liability company, or partnership is a “**Non-Controlling Interest**.”

“**Copyrighted Works**” means works of authorship which are owned by Franchisor and fixed in a tangible medium of expression including, without limitation, the content of the Manual, the design elements of the Marks, Franchisor’s menus, bulletins, correspondence and communications with our franchisees, training, advertising and promotional materials, and the content and design of Franchisor’s Web site.

“**Crisis Management Event**” means any event that occurs at or about the Restaurant premises or in connection with the operation of the Franchised Business that has or may cause harm or injury to customers or employees, such as food contamination, food spoilage/poisoning, food tampering/sabotage, contagious

diseases, natural disasters, terrorist acts, shootings or other acts of violence, or any other circumstance which may materially and adversely affect the System or the goodwill symbolized by the marks.

“Force Majeure” means acts of God (such as tornadoes, earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, fire or other natural catastrophe); strikes, lockouts or other industrial disturbances; war, terrorist acts, riot or other civil disturbance; epidemics; or other similar forces which could not, by the exercise of reasonable diligence, have been avoided; provided, however, that neither an act or failure to act by a government authority, nor the performance, nonperformance, or exercise of rights by your lender, contractor, or other person qualifies as a Force Majeure unless the act, failure to act, performance, non-performance, or exercise of rights resulted from a Force Majeure. Your financial inability to perform or your insolvency is not a Force Majeure.

“Gross Revenue” means the total selling price of all services and products and all income of every other kind and nature related to your NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, whether for cash or credit and regardless of collection in the case of credit. Gross Revenue does not include (i) sales (or similar) taxes that you collect from your customers if you transmit them to the appropriate taxing authority; (ii) proceeds from isolated sales of trade fixtures that are not part of the products and services you offer and that do not have any material effect on the operation of your NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant; (iii) tips or gratuities paid directly by Restaurant customers to your employees or paid to you and then turned over to these employees by you in lieu of direct tips or gratuities; or (iv) returns to shippers or manufacturers. Gross Revenue also do not include proceeds from the sale of gift cards (all proceeds from the sale of gift cards belong to us), but it does include the redemption value of gift cards at the time purchases are made.

“Manual” means the compilation of information and knowledge that is necessary and material to the System. The term “Manual,” as used in this Agreement, includes all publications, materials, drawings, memoranda, videotapes, CDs, DVDs, MP3s, and other electronic media that Franchisor from time to time may loan to you. The Manual may be supplemented or amended from time to time by letter, electronic mail, bulletin, videotape, CD, DVD, MP3, or other communications concerning the System to reflect changes in the image, specifications, and standards relating to developing, equipping, furnishing, and operating a NAUTICAL BOWLS.

“Marks” means certain trade names, service marks, trademarks, logos, emblems, and indicia of origin, including, but not limited, to the mark “NAUTICAL BOWLS” and such other trade names, service marks, and trademarks as are now designated and may hereafter be designated by Franchisor in writing for use in connection with the System.

“Owner” means each individual or entity holding a beneficial ownership in the developer entity. It includes all shareholders of a corporation, all members of a limited liability company, all general and limited partners of a partnership, and the grantor and the trustee of the trust. If any “Owner” is, itself, a partnership or other entity, then the term “Owner” includes each individual or entity holding a beneficial ownership in the partnership or entity; the intent being that the term “Owner” is intended to include all individuals holding a beneficial interest in the franchisee, either directly or indirectly.

“Proprietary Products” means recipes and menu items that incorporate Franchisor’s trade secrets and proprietary information and products and ingredients that are manufactured according to proprietary specifications.

“You” means the franchisee identified above and its successors and assigns.

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT B
KEY TERMS**

Section 1.1.1. The “Franchised Location” is at: _____

Section 1.2. The “Protected Area” is described as follows:

excluding any “Captive Markets” in this area.

Section 3.5. The “Opening Date” is: _____

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Attachment B on _____.

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
a Texas limited liability company

FRANCHISEE

By: _____

By: _____

Name: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT C
ENTITY INFORMATION**

If Franchisee is an entity, you represent and warrant that the following information is accurate and complete in all material respects as of _____.

- (1) Franchisee is a _____, formed under the laws of the state of _____.
- (2) You shall provide to Franchisor concurrently with the execution hereof true and accurate copies of the franchisee's charter documents and governing documents including Articles of Incorporation, Bylaws, Operating Agreement, Partnership Agreement, resolutions authorizing the execution hereof, and any amendments to the foregoing.
- (3) You promptly shall provide such additional information as Franchisor may from time to time request concerning all persons who may have any direct or indirect financial interest in the franchisee entity.
- (4) The name and address of each of Owner:

NAME

ADDRESS

**NUMBER OF SHARES OR
PERCENTAGE INTEREST**

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
a Texas limited liability company

FRANCHISEE

By: _____

By: _____

Name: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT D-1
GUARANTY AND PERSONAL UNDERTAKING**

The undersigned represents and agrees as follows:

1. I have read the Franchise Agreement between NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC (“**Franchisor**”), and _____ (“**Franchisee**”).
2. I own a beneficial interest in the Franchisee and would be considered an “**Owner**” within the definition contained in Franchise Agreement.
3. I understand that, were it not for this Guaranty and Personal Undertaking (“**Guaranty**”), Franchisor would not have agreed to enter into the Franchise Agreement with the Franchisee.
4. I will comply with of the provisions contained in Article 7 of the Franchise Agreement concerning the Franchisee’s use of Franchisor’s Marks and Copyrighted Works (as that term is defined in the Franchise Agreement). I understand that, except for the license granted to the Franchisee, I have no individual right to use the Marks or Copyrighted Works and I have no ownership interest in the Marks or Copyrighted Works.
5. I will comply with all of the provisions contained in Article 8 of the Franchise Agreement concerning the use of the Confidential Manuals and Information. I will maintain the confidentiality of all Confidential Information disclosed to me. I agree to use the Confidential Information only for the purposes authorized under the Franchise Agreement. I further agree not to disclose any of the Confidential Information, except (*a*) to the Franchisee’s employees on a need to know basis, (*b*) to the Franchisee’s and my legal and tax professionals to the extent necessary for me to meet my legal obligations, and (*c*) as otherwise may be required by law.
6. I will comply with all of the provisions contained in Article 12 of the Franchise Agreement concerning the transfer of my ownership interest in the Franchisee.
7. While I am an Owner of the Franchisee and, for a two-year period after I cease to be an Owner (or two years after termination or expiration (without renewal) of the Franchise Agreement, whichever occurs first), I will not:
 - (*a*) Divert or attempt to divert any present or prospective customer of the NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant to any competitor or do anything to harm the goodwill associated with the Marks and the System;
 - (*b*) Own, maintain, advise, operate, engage in, be employed by, make loans to, invest in, provide any assistance to, or have any interest in (as owner or otherwise) or relationship or association with, any Competitive Business. This restriction shall apply, while I am an Owner, to any location within the United States, its territories or commonwealths, or any other country, province, state or geographic area in which Franchisor or its Affiliates have used, sought registration of or registered the Marks or similar marks or operate or license others to operate a business under the Marks or similar marks. It will apply for two years after I cease to be an Owner (or two years after termination or expiration of the Franchise Agreement, whichever occurs first) to any location that (*i*) is, or is intended to be, located at the location of the former Restaurant; (*ii*) within a 25-mile radius of the Restaurant; or (*iii*) within a 25-mile radius of any other NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant in existence or under development at the time I cease being an Owner (or termination or expiration of the Franchise Agreement, whichever occurs first). This two-year period described in this Section 7(c) shall be tolled during any period of any noncompliance.
8. I agree that each of the foregoing covenants shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Guaranty. If all or any portion of a covenant in this Guaranty is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in an unappealed final decision to which

Franchisor is a party, I expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant subsumed within the terms of such covenant that imposes the maximum duty permitted by law, as if the resulting covenant were separately stated in and made a part of this Guaranty.

9. I understand and acknowledge that Franchisor has the right, in its sole discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant set forth in this Guaranty, or any portion thereof, without my consent, effective immediately upon receipt by me of written notice thereof, and I agree to comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified.

10. I agree that the provisions contained in Article 19 of the Franchise Agreement will apply to any dispute arising out of or relating to this Guaranty. If Franchisor brings any legal action to enforce its rights under this Guaranty, I will reimburse Franchisor its reasonable attorneys' fees and costs.

11. I hereby guarantee the prompt and full payment of all amounts owed by the Franchisee under the Franchise Agreement.

12. I will pay all amounts due under this Guaranty within 14 days after receiving notice from Franchisor that the Franchisee has failed to make the required payment. I understand and agree that Franchisor need not exhaust its remedies against the Franchisee before seeking recovery from me under this Guaranty.

13. No modification, change, impairment, or suspension of any of Franchisor's rights or remedies shall in any way affect any of my obligations under this Guaranty. If the Franchisee has pledged other security or if one or more other persons have personally guaranteed performance of the Franchisee's obligations, I agree that Franchisor's release of such security will not affect my liability under this Guaranty.

14. **I WAIVE TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING, OR COUNTERCLAIM, WHETHER AT LAW OR IN EQUITY, INVOLVING FRANCHISOR, WHICH ARISES OUT OF OR IS RELATED IN ANY WAY TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT, THE PERFORMANCE OF ANY PARTY UNDER THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT, AND/OR THE OFFER OR GRANT OF THE FRANCHISE.**

15. I understand that Franchisor's rights under this Guaranty shall be in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights or remedies available to Franchisor under applicable law.

16. I agree that any notices required to be delivered to me will be deemed delivered at the time delivered by hand; one Business Day after electronically confirmed transmission by facsimile or other electronic system; one Business Day after delivery by Express Mail or other recognized, reputable overnight courier; or three Business Days after placement in the United States Mail by Registered or Certified Mail, Return Receipt Requested, postage prepaid and addressed to the address identified on the signature line below. I may change this address only by delivering to Franchisor written notice of the change.

(Signatures on following page)

Intending to be legally bound, I have executed and delivered this Guaranty and Personal Undertaking on [DATE].

PERSONAL GUARANTORS:

Individually

Name

Address

Individually

Name

Address

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT D-2
CONFIDENTIALITY AND NON-COMPETITION AGREEMENT
(for trained employees of _____ (“Franchisee”))**

In accordance with the terms of this Confidentiality and Non-Competition Agreement (“**Confidentiality Agreement**”) and in consideration of my being in a trusted position with the Franchisee, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is acknowledged, I hereby acknowledge and agree that:

1. Franchisee has acquired the right and franchise from NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) to establish and operate a Franchised Business (“**Franchised Business**”) and the right to use in the operation of the Franchised Business Franchisor’s trade names, trademarks, service marks, including the service mark NAUTICAL BOWLS (“**Marks**”) and the system developed by Franchisor and/or its affiliates for operation and management of Franchised Businesses (“**System**”), as they may be changed, improved, and further developed from time to time in Franchisor’s sole discretion.
2. Franchisor possesses certain proprietary and confidential information relating to the operation of the System, which includes the Manuals, recipes, trade secrets, and copyrighted materials, methods, and other techniques and know-how (“**Confidential Information**”).
3. Any and all manuals, trade secrets, copyrighted materials, methods, information, knowledge, know-how, and techniques which Franchisor specifically designates as confidential shall be deemed to be Confidential Information for purposes of this Confidentiality Agreement.
4. In my trusted position with Franchisee, Franchisor and Franchisee will disclose the Confidential Information to me in furnishing to me the training program and subsequent ongoing training, Franchisor’s operations manual (“**Manual**”) and other general assistance during the term of this Confidentiality Agreement.
5. I will not acquire any interest in the Confidential Information, other than the right to utilize it in the operation of the Franchised Business during the term hereof, and the use or duplication of the Confidential Information for any use outside the System would constitute an unfair method of competition.
6. The Confidential Information is proprietary, involves trade secrets of Franchisor, and is disclosed to me solely on the condition that I agree, and I do hereby agree, that I shall hold in strict confidence all Confidential Information and all other information designated by Franchisor as confidential. Unless Franchisor otherwise agrees in writing, I will disclose and/or use the Confidential Information only in connection with my job duties, and will continue not to disclose any such information even after I cease to be in that position and will not use any such information even after I cease to be in that position unless I can demonstrate that such information has become generally known or easily accessible other than by the breach of an obligation of Franchisee under the Franchise Agreement.
7. Except as otherwise approved in writing by Franchisor, I shall not, while in my position with the Franchisee and for a continuous uninterrupted period commencing upon the cessation or termination of my position with Franchisee, regardless of the cause for termination, and continuing for one year thereafter, either directly or indirectly, for myself or through, on behalf of, or in conjunction with any other person, partnership, corporation, or other business entity own, maintain, engage in, be employed by, advise, assist, invest in, franchise, make loans to, or have any interest in (a) any health food restaurant, or (b) any quick-service or fast casual restaurant that derives a significant portion of its income from the sale of superfood smoothie bowls and healthy beverages items other than the business authorized in the Franchise Agreement, within a radius of 25 miles of any NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant, as those terms are defined in the Franchise Agreement. This restriction does not apply to my ownership of less than five percent beneficial

interest in the outstanding securities of any publicly held corporation. The two-year time period restriction will be tolled during any period of my noncompliance.

8. I agree that each of the foregoing covenants shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Confidentiality Agreement. If all or any portion of a covenant in this Confidentiality Agreement is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in an unappealed final decision to which Franchisor is a party, I expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant subsumed within the terms of such covenant that imposes the maximum duty permitted by law, as if the resulting covenant were separately stated in and made a part of this Confidentiality Agreement.

9. I understand and acknowledge that Franchisor has the right, in its sole discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant set forth in this Confidentiality Agreement, or any portion thereof, without my consent, effective immediately upon receipt by me of written notice thereof, and I agree to comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified.

10. Franchisor is a third-party beneficiary of this Confidentiality Agreement and may enforce it, solely and/or jointly with the Franchisee. I am aware that my violation of this Confidentiality Agreement will cause Franchisor and the Franchisee irreparable harm; therefore, I acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee and/or Franchisor may apply for the issuance of an injunction preventing me from violating this Confidentiality Agreement, and I agree to pay the Franchisee and Franchisor all the costs it/they incur(s), including, without limitation, legal fees and expenses, if this Confidentiality Agreement is enforced against me. Due to the importance of this Confidentiality Agreement to the Franchisee and Franchisor, any claim I have against the Franchisee or Franchisor is a separate matter and does not entitle me to violate or justify any violation of this Confidentiality Agreement.

11. This Confidentiality Agreement shall be construed under the laws of the State of Texas. The only way this Confidentiality Agreement can be changed is in writing signed by both the Franchisee and me.

12. With respect to all claims, controversies and disputes, I irrevocably consent to personal jurisdiction and submit myself to the jurisdiction of the state courts located in Hennepin County, Minnesota, and the United States District Court for the District of Minnesota. I acknowledge that I am to receive valuable information emanating from Franchisor's headquarters in ~~Minnetonka~~Excelsior, Minnesota. In recognition of the information and its origin, I hereby irrevocably consent to the personal jurisdiction of the state and federal courts of Texas as set forth above. Notwithstanding the foregoing, I acknowledge and agree that Franchisor or the Franchisee may bring and maintain an action against me in any court of competent jurisdiction for injunctive or other extraordinary relief against threatened conduct that will cause it loss or damages, under the usual equity rules, including the applicable rules for obtaining restraining orders and preliminary and permanent injunctions.

THE PARTIES HERETO, INTENDING TO BE LEGALLY BOUND, HAVE EXECUTED THIS CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENT AS OF THE DATES NOTED BELOW.

[EMPLOYEE]

ACKNOWLEDGED BY FRANCHISEE

Signature: _____

By: _____

Name: _____

Name: _____

Address: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Date: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

ATTACHMENT E
ACH AUTHORIZATION
AUTHORIZATION AGREEMENT FOR DIRECT PAYMENTS (ACH DEBITS)

Please complete and sign this form.

FRANCHISEE INFORMATION

Franchisee Name or Legal Entity

NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant Number & Location

Name and Email of Person to Receive ACH Debit Advice

AUTHORIZATION AGREEMENT

I (we) hereby authorize NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC (“Company”) to make ACH withdrawals from my (our) account at the financial institution named below. I also authorize the Company to initiate direct deposits into this account in the event that a debit entry is made in error. I (we) acknowledge that the origination of ACH transactions to or from my (our) account must comply with the provisions of U.S. law.

I agree to indemnify the Company for any loss arising in the event that any withdrawals from my (our) account shall be dishonored, whether with or without cause and whether intentionally or inadvertently.

This agreement will remain in effect until the Company has received advanced written notice of cancellation from me (us) in such time and in such manner as to afford the Company a reasonable opportunity to act on it, and in no event shall such notice period be less than 30 days.

PAYOR/FRANCHISEE ACCOUNT INFORMATION

Name of Financial Institution:

ABA Routing Number:

Account Number: Checking Savings

PAYOR/FRANCHISEE SIGNATURE

Authorized Signature
(Primary):

Date:

Authorized Signature (Joint):

Date:

Account holder(s), please sign here: *(Joint accounts require the signature of all persons having authority over the account)*

Please attach a voided check at right, fax and mail to:

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Attn: President ——— ATTACH CHECK HERE
~~3432 County Road 101~~
~~Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~ 2020 North Bayshore Drive
Unit 4104
Miami, Florida 33137

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT F
LEASE RIDER**

THIS LEASE RIDER (“**Rider**”) is made and entered into as of the ___ day of _____, 20__, by and between _____ (“**Landlord**”), with its principal offices at _____
_____—and _____ (“**Franchisee**”
or “**Tenant**”), with its principal offices at _____, and
NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC (“**Franchisor**”).

In consideration of, and as an inducement to the execution of the Franchise Agreement between Franchisor and its franchisee, each of the undersigned agree as follows:

(a) Landlord acknowledges that Tenant is a franchisee of Franchisor and that the Restaurant located at the Premises (“**Unit**”) is operated under the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise system, pursuant to a franchise agreement (“**Franchise Agreement**”) between Tenant and Franchisor. Landlord consents to Tenant’s use at the Premises of such marks and signs, decor items, color schemes, and related components of the NAUTICAL BOWLS system as Franchisor may prescribe for the Unit. During the term of the Franchise Agreement, the Premises may be used only for the operation of the Unit.

(b) Landlord agrees to furnish to Franchisor copies of any and all letters and notices sent to Tenant pertaining to the Lease and the Premises at the same time that such letters and notices are sent to Tenant. Without limiting the foregoing, in the event of any default by Tenant, Landlord shall give Franchisor written notice of such default. If Tenant has failed to cure such default at the expiration of the applicable cure period, Landlord shall give Franchisor further written notice of such failure (“**Franchisor Notice**”). Following Franchisor’s receipt of the Franchisor Notice, Franchisor shall have the right (but not the obligation) to cure Tenant’s default before Landlord shall exercise any of Landlord’s remedies arising as a consequence of Tenant’s default. Any such cure shall be completed within 15 days following Franchisor’s receipt of the Franchisor Notice. Such cure by Franchisor shall not be deemed to be an election to assume the terms, covenants, obligations, and conditions of the Lease.

(c) If Franchisor cures Tenant’s default, or if Franchisor notifies Landlord that the Franchise Agreement has been terminated (which termination shall constitute a non-curable default pursuant to the Lease upon Landlord’s receipt of Franchisor’s notice thereof), Landlord agrees, upon Franchisor’s written request, to assign to Franchisor any and all rights that Landlord may have under the Lease to remove and evict Tenant from the Premises and shall cooperate with Franchisor in order to pursue such action to a conclusion.

(d) If Franchisor cures Tenant’s default, or notifies Landlord of the termination of the Franchise Agreement, Franchisor shall have the right and option, upon written notice to Landlord, to do the following:

(i) Undertake to perform the terms, covenants, obligations, and conditions of the Lease on behalf of the Tenant (notwithstanding any removal or eviction of Tenant) for a period not to exceed six months from the first date of any cure by Franchisor; or

(ii) At any time within or at the conclusion of such six-month period, assume the terms, covenants, obligations, and conditions of the Lease for the remainder of the term, together with any applicable renewal options. In such event, Landlord and Franchisor shall enter into an agreement to document such assumption. Franchisor is not a party to the Lease and shall have no liability under the Lease unless and until said Lease is assigned to, and assumed by, Franchisor as herein provided.

(e) If, during the six-month period set forth in section (d)(1) above, or at any time after the assignment contemplated in section (d)(2), Franchisor shall notify Landlord that the franchise for the Unit is being granted to another NAUTICAL BOWLS franchisee, Landlord shall permit the assignment of the Lease to

said franchisee without the payment of any fee or other cost requirement, provided that, said franchisee meets Landlord's reasonable financial qualifications. Landlord shall not unreasonably withhold consent to such assignment. Thereafter, Franchisor shall be released from any and all further liabilities under the Lease. The parties agree to execute any commercially reasonable documents in furtherance of this section.

(f) Tenant will not assign the Lease or renew or extend the term thereof without the prior written consent of Franchisor, nor shall Landlord and Tenant amend or otherwise modify the Lease in any manner that could materially affect any of the foregoing requirements without the prior written consent of Franchisor.

(g) Franchisor shall have the right to enter the Premises to make any modification or alteration necessary to protect the NAUTICAL BOWLS System and Marks (including, without limitation, remove all signs, advertising materials, displays, fixtures, proprietary equipment and inventory, and any other items which display the Marks or are indicative of NAUTICAL BOWLS trade dress) or to cure any default under the Franchise Agreement or under the Lease, without being guilty of trespass or any other crime or tort. Landlord shall not be responsible for any expenses or damages arising from any such action by Franchisor. Tenant hereby releases, acquits, and discharges Franchisor and Landlord, their respective subsidiaries, affiliates, successors, and assigns and the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, employees, agents, and representatives of each of them, from any and all claims, demands, accounts, actions, and causes of action, known or unknown, vested or contingent, which any of them may have, ever had, now has, or may hereafter have by reason of any event, transaction, or circumstance arising out of or relating to the exercise of Franchisor's rights pursuant to the Addendum.

(h) Landlord shall subordinate any lien in favor of Landlord created by the Lease to Franchisor. Landlord's rights to collect on any liens that Landlord files or attaches to Tenant's property rights shall be subordinate and inferior to Franchisor's lien rights against any and all of the personal property, furnishings, equipment, signs, fixtures, and inventory owned by Tenant and on the premises operated by Tenant under the Lease.

(i) All notices sent pursuant to this Addendum shall be sent in the manner set forth in the Lease, and delivery of such notices shall be effective as of the times provided for in the Lease. For purposes of notice under the Lease, Franchisor's mailing address shall be ~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~ 2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida 33137, Attention: Chief Executive Officer, which address may be changed by written notice to Landlord in the manner provided in the Lease.

[Signature Page Follows]

Intending to be legally bound, the parties have executed and delivered this Agreement intending for it to be effective on the date first set forth above.

FRANCHISOR:

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISEE: (For an entity)

Name of Entity: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISEE: (For an individual)

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

LANDLORD:

Name of Entity: _____

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT G
FRANCHISEE QUESTIONNAIRE**

The following questionnaire is not applicable to franchisees subject to the laws of the states of California, Hawaii, Illinois, Indiana, Maryland, Michigan, Minnesota, New York, North Dakota, Rhode Island, South Dakota, Virginia, Washington, and Wisconsin.

Do not sign this Questionnaire if you are a resident in Maryland or the business is to be operated in Maryland.

As you know, NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC (“we” or “us”) and you are preparing to enter into a Franchise Agreement for the operation of a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise. The purposes of this Questionnaire are to determine whether any statements or promises were made to you that we have not authorized or that may be untrue, inaccurate, or misleading, to be certain that you have been properly represented in this transaction, and to be certain that you understand the limitations on claims you may make by reason of the purchase and operation of your franchise. You cannot sign or date this Questionnaire the same day as the Receipt for the Franchise Disclosure Document, but you must sign and date it the same day you sign the Franchise Agreement and pay your franchise fee. Please review each of the following questions carefully and provide honest responses to each question. If you answer “No” to any of the questions below, please explain in detail the claim, representation, or statement below.

- Yes ___ No ___ 1. Have you received the Franchise Disclosure Document we provided?
- Yes ___ No ___ 2. Have you reviewed the Franchise Disclosure Document and Franchise Agreement with a lawyer?
- Yes ___ No ___ 3. Do you understand all disputes or claims you may have arising out of or relating to the Franchise Agreement must be brought in the judicial district in which our principal place of business is located, if not resolved informally or by mediation?
- Yes ___ No ___ 4. A) Do you understand that the U.S. Government has enacted anti-terrorist legislation that prevents us from carrying on business with any suspected terrorist or anyone associated directly or indirectly with terrorist activities?
- Yes ___ No ___ B) Is it true that you have never been a suspected terrorist or associated directly or indirectly with terrorist activities?
- Yes ___ No ___ C) Do you understand that we will not approve your purchase of a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise if you are a suspected terrorist or associated directly or indirectly with terrorist activity?
- Yes ___ No ___ D) Is it true that you are not purchasing a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise with the intent or purpose of violating any anti-terrorism law or for obtaining money to be contributed to a terrorist organization?
- Yes ___ No ___ 5. Is it true no employee or other person speaking on our behalf made any statement or promise regarding the costs involved in operating a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise that is not contained in the Franchise Disclosure Document or that is contrary to, or different from, the information contained in the Franchise Disclosure Document?

Yes ___ No ___

6. Is it true no employee or other person speaking on our behalf made any statement or promise regarding the actual, average, or projected profits that you may earn in operating your Restaurant?

Yes ___ No ___

7. Is it true that no one speaking on our behalf made any representation to you concerning the amount of money or profits that any other NAUTICAL BOWLS Restaurant derived that is not contained in the Franchise Disclosure Document or that is contrary to, or different from, the information contained in the Franchise Disclosure Document?

Yes ___ No ___

8. Do you understand that the Franchise Agreement contains the entire agreement between us and you concerning the franchise, meaning that we are not bound by any prior oral or written statements that may have been made to you but which are not contained in the Franchise Agreement or Franchise Disclosure Document?

If you answered "No" to questions 1-8, please explain in detail the claim, representation or statement:

NOTE:- IF THE FRANCHISEE IS A CORPORATION, PARTNERSHIP, LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY OR OTHER ENTITY, ALL OWNERS MUST EXECUTE THIS FRANCHISEE ACKNOWLEDGMENT.

Signed: _____
Name: _____
Date: _____

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT H
THREE-PACK ADDENDUM
NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC**

This Three-Pack Addendum (“**Addendum**”) made between NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC, a Texas limited liability company with its principal business located at ~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~ 2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida 33137 (“**Franchisor**”), and the Franchisee identified in the Summary Page (“**you**”), to be effective on the Effective Date identified in the Summary Page.

RECITALS

- A. Contemporaneously with the execution of this Addendum, you are entering into the NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchise Agreement (the “**Franchise Agreement**”), pursuant to which you will open and begin operating a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised business on or before _____ (the “Nautical Bowls #1”).
- B. Franchisor and you are parties to that NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchise Agreement and desire for you to open, and operate two additional NAUTICAL BOWLS franchised businesses and be bound to a NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise agreement for each of those additional franchised businesses (“Additional NAUTICAL BOWLS”) (also each referred to as “Nautical Bowls #2”, and “Nautical Bowls #3”), such franchise agreements being substantially the same as the NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchise Agreement.
- C. The parties desire to enter into this Addendum in order to clarify certain obligations under the Franchise Agreements, as they relate to the Additional NAUTICAL BOWLS.

In consideration of the foregoing and the mutual covenants and consideration below, you and Franchisor agree as follows:

AGREEMENT

1. Definitions. Capitalized terms will have the meanings ascribed to them in each of the respective Franchise Agreements unless otherwise defined herein.
2. Franchise Fee. The parties agree that you will not pay the initial franchise fee of \$39,500 but will pay ~~an initial franchise fee of \$25,000 per NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchised Business~~, \$99,500 for all three locations due upon signing of this Addendum.
3. Franchisee Obligations. You agree that you are required to begin operation of NAUTICAL BOWLS #2 within six months after you begin operation of NAUTICAL BOWLS #1. You agree that you are required to begin operation of NAUTICAL BOWLS #3 within six months after you begin operation of NAUTICAL BOWLS #2.
4. Franchise Agreements. Upon Execution of this Addendum, the parties shall simultaneously execute a separate franchise agreement identical to the Franchise Agreement herein for each of NAUTICAL BOWLS #1, NAUTICAL BOWLS #2, and NAUTICAL BOWLS #3.
5. Default. Failure to timely begin operation of any of the NAUTICAL BOWLS Franchised Businesses herein according to the obligations herein shall be an automatic forfeiture of the Protected Area for that Franchised Business that you failed to timely begin operating and shall cause that franchise agreement to be terminated without refund of the Initial Franchise Fee.
6. Ratification. All other terms and conditions of the Franchise Agreement, and as they apply to all three franchise agreements herein, and of this Addendum are hereby ratified and confirmed.

Each of the undersigned hereby acknowledges having read and understood this Addendum and consents to be bound by all of its terms.

FRANCHISEE: (For an entity)

Name of Entity: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISOR:

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
a Texas limited liability company

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

FRANCHISEE: (For an individual)

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

EXHIBIT C
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

LIST OF CURRENT FRANCHISEES
AND LIST OF FORMER FRANCHISEES

**NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT**

LIST OF FRANCHISEES AS OF DECEMBER 31, ~~2022~~2023

Franchisee	Street Address	City	STState	Zip	
Dan Martin Cheryl Hatfield	23050 Via Village Suite 1113 West Martin Luther King Boulevard	Estero Fayetteville	FL AR	33928 72701	Estero32@na
David Patalski	10030 W. McDowell Road, Suite 150, Space 033	Avondale	AZ	85323	
Kristi Browne & Kevin Browne	18529 N. Scottsdale Rd., Suite 128	Scottsdale	AZ	85255	
Kristi Browne & Kevin Browne	690 S. Novus Place, Suite 185	Tempe	AZ	85281	
Jacob Schoenleben	10515 N. Oracle Rd, Suite 167	Oro Valley	AZ	85737	
Steve & Elaine Weberman	21001 North Tatum Boulevard, Suite 80-1660	Phoenix	AZ	85050	
Lisa & Kevin Hinderleider	34 Wilbur Cross Way, Suites 101A and 101B	Storrs	CT	06268	
Katie & Bill Archer Dan & Amanda Martin	2355 Vanderbilt Beach Rd- Suite, Ste 110	Naples	FL	34109	Naples30@n
Brian & Roxana Hampson	117 NW 136TH Ave	Sunrise	FL	33325	
Joel & Melissa Nimmo Parth Patel	2323 Plum Street 1518 Commons Dr	Geneva Edwardsville	IL	62025 60134	Edwardsville35@n
Doug Amundson	8 W. Gartner Rd. Suite 168	Naperville	IL	60540	Naperville40@n
Parth Patel	11 Danada Square East	Wheaton	IL	60187	
Parth Patel	8130 Calumet Ave, Suite 101	Munster	IN	46321	
Dave Rinker	8051 W. 160th St.	Overland Park	KS	66223	
Dave Rinker	11648 W 135th St, Unit 18	Overland Park	KS	66221	
Daniel Fisch	30955 Woodward Ave., Suite 425	Royal Oak	MI	48073	
Bryant & Rachel Amundson Nate & Amy Bernal	14873 S. Robert Trail 16534 W 78th St.	Eden Prairie Rosemount	MN	55068 55346	952.68
Bryant & Rachel Amundson Richard Berger	3432 County Rd 101 420 Division Street	Minnetonka Northfield	MN	55345 55057	952.68

Franchisee	Street Address	City	STState	Zip	
Joe Kraus	15050 Cedar Ave Suite 113 MN	Apple Valley	MN	55124	
Hayley Noll Devin & Mikaylah Pokorney	10904 Baltimore St.	Blaine	MN	55449	
Alex & Devane Trogstad	606 Crossroads Campus Dr.	Buffalo	MN	55313	Buffalo47@n
Mike Roeder, Brianna Roeder, Jordan Roeder	12496 Champlin Dr	Champlin	MN	55316	
Kirin Hawley Alena Severson & Anne Brehmer	7860 Century Blvd. 144 Pioneer Trail	Chaska Chanhassen	MN	55317 55318	Chanhassen46@n
Trent Anderson	1322 5th Street SE	Minneapolis Dinkytown	MN	55414	
Bryant Bohlig	7967 Wedgewood Ln	Maple Grove	MN	55369	
Brant & Andrea Marple	3344 Promenade Ave. Suite 102	Eagan	MN	55121	Eagan5@n
Bryant & Rachel Amundson Matt Norring	16534 W 78th St 5013 Ewing Ave	Minneapolis Eden Prairie	MN	55346 55410	edina@n
Bryant & Rachel Amundson	291 Water Street	Excelsior	MN	55331	
Monica & Komarof Revollo	11301 Highway Suite 301	Hopkins	MN	55305	
Eva & Alex Villalobos	17706 Kenwood Trail	Lakeville	MN	55044	
Martin Kruger	60 East Broadway, Suite S366	Mall Of America	MN	55425	
Devin & Mikaylah Pokorney	1600 Warren St.	Mankato	MN	56001	
Bryant Bohlig Justin Stang	15609 Grove Circle North 7967 Wedgewood Ln	Maple Grove	MN	55369	maplegr
Bryant & Rachel Amundson	3432 County Rd 101	Minnetonka	MN	55345	n
Vanessa Riffel	4237A Winnetka Ave N	New Hope	MN	55428	
Paul Siegel Alex & Devane Trogstad	3500 Vicksburg Lane North, Suite 600	Plymouth	MN	55447	
Martin Kruger	1816 66th Street, Suite 1816	Richfield	MN	55423	
Jeff Kothenbeutel	230 20th Ave. SW	Rochester	MN	55902	

Franchisee	Street Address	City	STState	Zip	
<u>Devin & Mikaylah Pokorney</u>	<u>14020 Suite 250, Highway 13</u>	<u>Savage</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>55378</u>	
<u>Brian Hahn Dan & Adam Wagner</u>	<u>5327 West 16th St 110 2nd Street South, Suite 116B</u>	<u>St. Louis Waite Park</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>5541656387</u>	<u>saintlo</u>
Alena Severson & Anne Brehmer	1750 Tower Blvd., Suite 104	Victoria	MN	55386	<u>Victoria2@n</u>
<u>Katie & Adam Stowell</u>	<u>4717 Highway 61</u>	<u>White Bear Lake</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>55110</u>	<u>w</u>
Laura & Madi Sosa	9955 Hudson Place, Suite 550	Woodbury	MN	55125	<u>Woodbury4@n</u>
<u>Matt Norring Devin & Mikaylah Pokorney</u>	<u>14020 Highway 13, Suite 250 5013 Ewing Ave S</u>	<u>Savage Edina</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>55410 55378</u>	<u>sa</u>
Chris Rasmussen	8250 N Oxford Ave.	Kansas City	MO	64158	<u>Kansascity31@n</u>
<u>Byron & Kim Bagaasen</u>	<u>1205 Parkside Main Street</u>	<u>Cary</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>27519</u>	
Nicole & Lou D'Errico D'Errico	8040 #400 Providence Rd. Road	<u>South Charlotte</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>28277</u>	<u>sc</u>
<u>Lane Vergeldt</u>	<u>116 Charlie Medlin Drive, Suite E</u>	<u>Surf City</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>28445</u>	
<u>Todd & Cathy Natale</u>	<u>32 Harnett St</u>	<u>Wilmington</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>28401</u>	
<u>David & Kim Scott Mike Beyer</u>	<u>665 32nd Ave, Suite 106</u>	Fargo	ND	<u>5810458078</u>	
<u>Jon Miskavige</u>	<u>3251 32nd Avenue South Suite A1</u>	<u>Grand Forks</u>	<u>ND</u>	<u>58201</u>	
<u>Cameron & Jamie Scalzo</u>	<u>927 Holt Rd, Suite 400</u>	<u>Webster</u>	<u>NY</u>	<u>14580</u>	
<u>Meena Aggarwal</u>	<u>1597 Washington Pike, Suite a34</u>	<u>Bridgeville</u>	<u>PA</u>	<u>15017</u>	
<u>Humza Tanvir</u>	<u>810 Loucks Rd</u>	<u>York</u>	<u>PA</u>	<u>17404</u>	
<u>Mark & Monique Wallace</u>	<u>600 Long Point Rd</u>	<u>Mt. Pleasant</u>	<u>SC</u>	<u>29464</u>	<u>m</u>
Lexus Paulson	4009 W. 41st St. Street	Sioux Falls	SD	57106	
<u>Paul & Melissa Garcia</u>	<u>12261 Eastlake Blvd, Suite b203</u>	<u>El Paso</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>79928</u>	
<u>Todd Nickell & Lorna Sawatzky</u>	<u>1900 Aldrich Street, Suite #145</u>	<u>Austin</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>78723</u>	
<u>Nam Vuong Nguyen</u>	<u>1301 Keller Pkwy, Suite 400</u>	<u>Keller</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>76248</u>	

Franchisee	Street Address	City	ST	State	Zip	
<u>Katie Berge Ola & Bibi Ladipo-Ajayi</u>	<u>4610 Long Prairie Rd 4849 Farm to Market Rd 1488</u>	<u>The Woodlands</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>75208</u>	<u>77354</u>	<u>Flowermound39@n</u>
<u>Nathan & Marci Herrell</u>	<u>1314 N Redwood Rd Suite 200</u>	<u>Saratoga Springs</u>	<u>UT</u>		<u>84048</u>	<u>sa</u>
<u>Noah & Linnae Ford</u>	<u>2121 East, 9400 South</u>	<u>Sandy</u>	<u>UT</u>		<u>84093</u>	
<u>Gabriel, Keisha, James, Susan & Andrew Wolfe</u>	<u>19353 Promenade Dr</u>	<u>Leesburg</u>	<u>VA</u>		<u>20178</u>	
<u>Kelly & Mark Eckels</u>	<u>103 West Edge Way, Unit E</u>	<u>Lynchburg</u>	<u>VA</u>		<u>24502</u>	

**LIST OF FRANCHISEES WITH SIGNED FRANCHISE AGREEMENT,
BUT OUTLET NOT OPEN AS OF DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Franchisee	City	Street Address	City	State	ST	Zip	Zip	First Name	Em
<u>Gilbert</u>		<u>South Val Vista Dr. and E. Mercy Rd</u>	<u>AZ</u>			<u>85297</u>		<u>Kristi & Kevin Browne</u>	<u>847-612-3</u>
<u>Trent Anderson</u>	<u>Queen Creek</u>	<u>Alieo Rd & Ben Hill Griffin Parkway</u>	<u>Fort Myers</u>	<u>AZ</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>85142</u>	<u>33913</u>	<u>Jenn & Tony Roldan</u>	<u>dinkytown2 nauticalbowl</u>
<u>Bill & Katie Archer</u>	<u>Gilbert</u>	<u>Pristine Dr Gilbert Rd. and Vanderbilt Beach Rd</u>	<u>Naples</u>	<u>AZ</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>85204</u>	<u>34119</u>	<u>Jenn & Tony</u>	<u>Naples30@ 225-5696</u>
<u>Tucson</u>		<u>Cortaro and Silverbell</u>	<u>AZ</u>			<u>85743</u>		<u>Jacob Schoenleben</u>	<u>320-293-8</u>
<u>Tucson</u>		<u>1200 East University Blvd</u>	<u>AZ</u>			<u>85721</u>		<u>Jacob Schoenleben</u>	<u>320-293-8</u>
<u>Phoenix</u>		<u>Tatum Blvd & Shea Blvd</u>	<u>AZ</u>			<u>85028</u>		<u>Steve & Elaine Weberman</u>	<u>248-324-8</u>
<u>Phoenix</u>		<u>2550 W Happy Valley Rd</u>	<u>AZ</u>			<u>85085</u>		<u>Steve & Elaine Weberman</u>	<u>248-324-8</u>
<u>San Diego</u>		<u>Del Mar Heights Rd & Carmel Valley Rd</u>	<u>CA</u>			<u>92130</u>		<u>Aaron Berco</u>	<u>619-794-9</u>
<u>Roseville</u>		<u>Galleria Blvd. and Roseville Pkwy</u>	<u>CA</u>			<u>95678</u>		<u>Prasanth Reddy Nyalapatla & Mounika Mallepalli</u>	<u>361-355-1</u>
<u>Bill & Katie Archer</u>	<u>Roseville</u>	<u>Collier Douglas Blvd. and Grand Lely Drive</u>	<u>South CA</u>	<u>Naples</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>95661</u>	<u>34114</u>	<u>Prasanth Reddy Nyalapatla & Mounika Mallepalli</u>	<u>Naples30@ 355-1752</u>
<u>South Windsor</u>		<u>Hemlock Ave. & Evergreen Way</u>	<u>CT</u>			<u>6074</u>		<u>Lisa & Kevin Hinderleider</u>	<u>623-693-1</u>
<u>Washington</u>		<u>4000 Wisconsin Ave NW</u>	<u>DC</u>			<u>20016</u>		<u>Hassan Tetteh</u>	<u>917-568-8</u>
<u>Washington</u>		<u>2323 Sherman Ave NW</u>	<u>DC</u>			<u>20001</u>		<u>Hassan Tetteh</u>	<u>917-568-8</u>

<u>Franchisee</u> <u>City</u>	<u>Street Address</u>	<u>City</u> <u>State</u>	<u>ST</u> <u>Zip</u>	<u>Zip</u> <u>First Name</u>	<u>Em</u>
<u>Miramar</u>	<u>Red Rd & Miramar Pkwy</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>33025</u>	<u>Elijah & Anisse Campbell</u>	<u>754-364-7</u> <u>763-954-0</u>
<u>Weston</u>	<u>Weston Rd & Emerald Estates Dr</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>33331</u>	<u>Elijah & Anisse Campbell</u>	<u>754-364-7</u> <u>763-954-0</u>
<u>Horizon West</u>	<u>New Independence Parkway and Hamlin Groves Trail</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>85297</u>	<u>Steve & Megan de Barril</u>	<u>209.743.8</u>
<u>Windermere</u>	<u>Universal Blvd and Destination Parkway</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>32819</u>	<u>Steve & Megan de Barril</u>	<u>209.743.8</u>
<u>Sarasota</u>	<u>US Hwy 41 & Bahia Vista St</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>34239</u>	<u>Mark Kleinschmidt & KevinFahey</u>	<u>651-270-8</u> <u>309-472-9</u>
<u>Sarasota</u>	<u>John Ringling Blvd & N Washington Dr</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>34236</u>	<u>Mark Kleinschmidt & KevinFahey</u>	<u>651-270-8</u> <u>309-472-9</u>
<u>Naples</u>	<u>Radio RD and Airport Pulling</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>34014</u>	<u>Dan & Amanda Martin</u>	<u>(763) 218-</u>
<u>Plainfield</u>	<u>Smith Rd. & Township Line 300 S</u>	<u>IN</u>	<u>46168</u>	<u>Jigna Shah Singh & Kulwinder Malhi</u>	<u>317-989-1</u>
<u>Indianapolis</u>	<u>7800 Col. H. Weir Cook Memorial Dr.</u>	<u>IN</u>	<u>46241</u>	<u>Jigna Shah Singh & Kulwinder Malhi</u>	<u>317-989-1</u>
<u>Trent AndersonFairway</u>	<u>Beach Dr NE & Central Ave, West 53rd St. & Belinder Ave.</u>	<u>St. PetersburgKS</u>	<u>FL66205</u>	<u>33704Rinker Rinker</u>	<u>dinkytown26</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u>
<u>Franklin</u>	<u>Main St. & Dean Avenue</u>	<u>MA</u>	<u>2038</u>	<u>Lisa & Kevin Hinderleider</u>	<u>623-693-1</u>
<u>College Park</u>	<u>4400 Calvert Rd</u>	<u>MD</u>	<u>20740</u>	<u>Sean & Andrea Sowards</u>	<u>571-232-1</u>
<u>Daniel FishMarquette</u>	<u>S Main N 3rd St & Ann Arbor Saline Rd. W Bluff St</u>	<u>Ann ArborMI</u>	<u>MI49855</u>	<u>48103Michael & Miryah Bosio</u>	<u>Royaloak25</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u> <u>218-820-3</u>
<u>Duluth</u>	<u>S 21st Ave E & London Rd</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>55812</u>	<u>Jon Miskavige</u>	<u>701-330-3</u>
<u>Kansas City</u>	<u>Highway 9 & US 169</u>	<u>MO</u>	<u>64116</u>	<u>Chris Rasmussen</u>	<u>712-574-3</u>
<u>Daniel FishKansas City</u>	<u>W 9 MileNW Roanridge Rd & NoviNW Barry Rd.</u>	<u>NoviMO</u>	<u>MI85297</u>	<u>48375Chris Rasmussen</u>	<u>Royaloak25</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u>
<u>Chapel Hill</u>	<u>Church St & W Franklin St</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>27516</u>	<u>Byron & Kim Bagaasen</u>	<u>(919) 244-</u>
<u>Jacksonville</u>	<u>Western Blvd. and Gum Branch Rd.</u>	<u>NC</u>	<u>28540</u>	<u>Todd & Cathy Natale</u>	<u>845-656-6</u>
<u>Martin KrugerLeland</u>	<u>Mall of America 60 E BroadwayOcean Hwy E (Hwy 17) & Ploof Rd.,</u>	<u>BloomingtonNC</u>	<u>MN28451</u>	<u>55425Todd & Cathy Natale</u>	<u>richfield28@</u> <u>656-6554</u>
<u>Grand ForksJeff Kothenbeutel</u>	<u>48th N 4th St & University Ave NW & 55th St. NW</u>	<u>Cascade TownshipND</u>	<u>MN58203</u>	<u>55904Jon Miskavige</u>	<u>Rochester29</u> <u>330-3237</u>
<u>Brian HahnJenkintown</u>	<u>Dodd933 Old York Rd-& N Plaza Dr</u>	<u>Mendota HeightsPA</u>	<u>MN19046</u>	<u>55120Humza Tanvir</u>	<u>mendotaheig</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u>

<u>Franchisee</u> <u>City</u>	<u>Street Address</u>	<u>City</u> <u>State</u>	<u>ST</u> <u>Zip</u>	<u>Zip</u> <u>First Name</u>	<u>Em</u>
<u>Mike, Brianna, & Jordan Roeder</u> <u>Ardmore</u>	<u>2941 Hennepin</u> <u>112 Coulter Ave</u>	<u>Minneapolis</u> <u>PA</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>19003</u>	<u>55408</u> <u>Humza Tanvir</u>	<u>uptown12@</u> <u>470-2011</u>
<u>Martin Kruger</u> <u>North Wales</u>	<u>66th St E & 1460 Bethlehem Pike</u> <u>Richfield Pkwy</u>	<u>Richfield</u> <u>PA</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>19454</u>	<u>55426</u> <u>Humza Tanvir</u>	<u>richfield28@</u> <u>470-2011</u>
<u>Wayne</u>	<u>171 Swedesford Rd</u>	<u>PA</u>	<u>19087</u>	<u>Humza Tanvir</u>	<u>732-470-2</u>
<u>Matt Riggs</u> <u>Mount Pleasant</u>	<u>Aquila Ave S & Theodore Christianson Dr</u> <u>3525 Park Ave, Mount Pleasant</u>	<u>St. Louis Park</u> <u>SC</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>29466</u>	<u>55426</u> <u>Mark & Monique Wallace</u>	<u>864-764-2</u>
<u>Summerville</u>	<u>200 Scholar Way</u>	<u>SC</u>	<u>29483</u>	<u>Mark & Monique Wallace</u>	<u>864-764-2</u>
<u>Elgin</u>	<u>583 Spears Creek Church Rd</u>	<u>SC</u>	<u>29045</u>	<u>Melvin & Tunisia Wells</u>	<u>803-705-0</u>
<u>Myrtle Beach</u>	<u>Myrtle Beach Boardwalk & Promenade</u>	<u>SC</u>	<u>29577</u>	<u>Melvin & Tunisia Wells</u>	<u>803-705-0</u>
<u>Sioux Falls</u>	<u>Arrowhead Pkwy & Veterans Pkwy</u>	<u>SD</u>	<u>57110</u>	<u>Lexus Paulson</u>	<u>605-370-4</u>
<u>Trent Anderson</u> <u>Franklin</u>	<u>Snelling E Main St & 2nd Ave S & St Clair Ave N</u>	<u>Saint Paul</u> <u>TN</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>37064</u>	<u>55105</u> <u>John Stoebe</u>	<u>dinkytown2@</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u>
<u>Nashville</u>	<u>US-431 & TN-248</u>	<u>TN</u>	<u>37064</u>	<u>John Stoebe</u>	<u>952-334-9</u>
<u>League City</u>	<u>FM646 & Gulf Fwy S,</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>77539</u>	<u>Fethi Benraouane</u>	<u>832-580-3</u>
<u>Brian Hahn</u> <u>The Woodlands</u>	<u>Six Pines Dr & Lake St E & Broadway Ave S</u> <u>Woodlands Dr</u>	<u>Wayzata</u> <u>TX</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>85297</u>	<u>Fethi Benraouane</u>	<u>wayzata22@</u> <u>580-3085</u>
<u>Dallas</u>	<u>Mockingbird Ln & N Central Expy</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>75205</u>	<u>Khanhxay Makkhavane Mangkone Chanthaphone</u>	<u>817-266-7</u> <u>817-262-7</u>
<u>Frisco</u>	<u>Dallas North Tollway & Main St</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>75033</u>	<u>Khanhxay Makkhavane Mangkone Chanthaphone</u>	<u>817-266-7</u> <u>817-262-7</u>
<u>Mike, Brianna, & Jordan Roeder</u> <u>West Lake Hills</u>	<u>4034 Hoffman</u> <u>3300 Bee Caves Rd</u>	<u>TX</u> <u>White Bear Lake</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>78746</u>	<u>Todd Nickell Lorna Sawatzky</u> <u>55110</u>	<u>whitebearlak</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u> <u>612-499-5</u>
<u>Trent Anderson</u> <u>Lakeway</u>	<u>494 & Valley Creek Rd</u> <u>1945 Medical Drive</u>	<u>Woodbury</u> <u>TX</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>78734</u>	<u>55125</u> <u>Todd Nickell Lorna Sawatzky</u>	<u>dinkytown2@</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u> <u>612-499-5</u>
<u>Laura MacIntyre</u> <u>Riverton</u>	<u>9955 Hudson Place, Suite 550</u> <u>W 12600 S & S Pasture RD</u>	<u>Woodbury</u> <u>UT</u>	<u>MN</u> <u>84096</u>	<u>55125</u> <u>Noah & Linnae Ford</u>	<u>woodbury4@</u> <u>898-7606</u> <u>763-954-1</u>
<u>Orem</u>	<u>State St & University Pkwy</u>	<u>UT</u>	<u>84097</u>	<u>Noah & Linnae Ford</u>	<u>763-898-7</u> <u>763-954-1</u>
<u>Meena Aggarwal</u> <u>Fairfax</u>	<u>Washington Pike & Bursca Dr</u> <u>4100 Monument Corner Dr.</u>	<u>VA</u> <u>Bridgeville</u>	<u>PA</u> <u>22030</u>	<u>45017</u> <u>Sean & Andrea Sowards</u>	<u>bridgeville2@</u> <u>nauticalbowl</u>
<u>Arlington</u>	<u>1109 N. Highkand St.</u>	<u>VA</u>	<u>22201</u>	<u>Gabriel Wolfe</u>	<u>703-728-9</u>

<u>Franchisee</u> <u>City</u>	<u>Street Address</u>	<u>City</u> <u>State</u>	<u>ST</u> <u>Zip</u>	<u>Zip</u> <u>First Name</u>	<u>Em</u>
<u>Appleton</u>	<u>S Appleton St & W College Ave</u>	<u>WI</u>	<u>54911</u>	<u>Michael & Miryah Bosio</u>	<u>920-216-4218-820-3</u>
<u>La Crosse</u>	<u>3900 Highway 1 La Crosse</u>	<u>WI</u>	<u>54650</u>	<u>Jeff Kothenbeutel</u>	<u>507-261-1</u>
<u>Madison</u>	<u>State St & W Gorham St</u>	<u>WI</u>	<u>53703</u>	<u>Jon Miskavige</u>	<u>701-330-3</u>
<u>Madison</u>	<u>N Midvale Blvd & University Ave</u>	<u>WI</u>	<u>53705</u>	<u>Jon Miskavige</u>	<u>701-330-3</u>

LIST OF FRANCHISEES WHO LEFT THE SYSTEM AS OF DECEMBER 31, 2022

<u>Franchisee</u>	<u>City</u>	<u>ST</u> <u>State</u>	<u>Phone or E-Mail</u> <u>Email</u>
<u>Joel Nimmo</u>	<u>Edwardsville</u>	<u>IL</u>	<u>joelnimmo@gmail.com</u>
<u>Katie Berge</u>	<u>Flower Mound</u>	<u>TX</u>	<u>bergekatie@gmail.com</u>
<u>Justin Stang</u> <u>Linda & Maria Sons</u>	<u>1750 Tower Blvd, Suite 104 Maple Grove</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>55386jstang13@gmail.com</u>
<u>Kirin Hawley</u>	<u>Chanhassen</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>Kirinhawley@gmail.com</u>
<u>Brian & Michelle Gibbs</u>	<u>San Diego</u>	<u>CA</u>	<u>briangibbs@gmail.com</u>
<u>Arianne Hahn</u>	<u>Saint Louis Park</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>ariannehahn@gmail.com</u>
<u>David Scott</u>	<u>Fargo</u>	<u>ND</u>	<u>dave@scottgrowthstrategies.com</u>
<u>Matt Riggs</u>	<u>Hopkins</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>matthew.j.riggs1@gmail.com</u>
<u>Paul Siegel</u>	<u>Plymouth</u>	<u>MN</u>	<u>candyisgr8@aol.com</u>
<u>Bill and Katie Archer</u>	<u>Naples</u>	<u>FL</u>	<u>williamkat@gmail.com</u>

If you buy this franchise, your contact information may be disclosed to other buyers when you leave the franchise system.

EXHIBIT D
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT
TABLE OF CONTENTS OF MANUAL

NAUTICAL BOWLS
FRANCHISE OPERATIONS MANUAL
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	INTRODUCTION TO THE MANUAL.....	1-1
1.1	Manual Organization.....	1-1
1.2	Ownership of the Manual.....	1-1
1.3	Purpose of this Manual.....	1-1
1.4	Importance of Confidentiality.....	1-2
1.5	Keeping the Manual Current.....	1-2
1.6	Submitting Suggestions to Us.....	1-3
1.7	Disclaimer.....	1-3
2	INTRODUCTION TO THE FRANCHISE SYSTEM.....	2-1
2.1	Welcome Letter.....	2-1
2.2	History of Nautical Bowls.....	2-2
2.3	Who to Call.....	2-2
2.4	Overview of Services Provided to Franchisees.....	2-2
2.4.1	Site Selection.....	2-2
2.4.2	Lease Approval.....	2-3
2.4.3	Initial Training.....	2-3
2.4.4	Other Initial Support.....	2-3
2.4.5	Opening Support.....	2-3
2.4.6	Ongoing Training and Support.....	2-4
2.4.7	Suggested Retail Prices.....	2-4
2.4.8	Approved Suppliers.....	2-4
2.4.9	Marketing.....	2-4
2.4.10	Internet.....	2-4
2.5	Overview of Your Responsibilities.....	2-4
2.6	Visits From Us.....	2-5
2.7	Fees.....	2-6
3	PRE-OPENING PROCEDURES.....	3-1
3.1	Introduction.....	3-1
3.2	Establishment of Business Form.....	3-1
3.2.1	Business Structure.....	3-1
3.2.2	Overview of Entity Choices.....	3-1
3.2.3	Liability Protection.....	3-2
3.2.4	Income Taxation.....	3-3
3.2.5	Administration.....	3-4
3.2.6	Other Factors in Entity Choice.....	3-4

3.2.7	Bottom Line.....	3-4
3.2.8	Where to Form Your Entity.....	3-4
3.2.9	Naming Your Entity	3-4
3.2.10	Assumed Name Certificate.....	3-5
3.2.11	Transfer of Franchise Agreement.....	3-5
3.3	Site Selection Process.....	3-6
3.3.1	Site Selection Criteria.....	3-6
3.3.2	Market Analysis	3-7
3.3.3	Seeking Approval of Proposed Sites	3-7
3.3.4	Lease Considerations.....	3-8
3.3.5	Seeking Approval of Lease	3-9
3.4	Licenses, Permits and Taxes.....	3-9
3.4.1	Introduction	3-9
3.4.2	Business Licenses and Permits.....	3-9
3.4.3	Optional Certifications	3-10
3.4.4	Tax Registrations and Payments	3-10
3.4.5	State Information Web Sites.....	3-11
3.4.6	Additional Resources	3-11
3.5	Training	3-11
3.5.1	Scheduling Initial Training.....	3-11
3.5.2	Initial Training Program.....	3-12
3.5.3	Food Safety Training.....	3-13
3.6	Building-Out Your Facility	3-13
3.6.1	Selection of Architect/Designer and Engineer	3-13
3.6.2	Architecture Proposal	3-14
3.6.3	Questions to ask your Architect	3-15
3.6.4	Range of Architectural Services.....	3-16
3.6.5	Selection of a General Contractor	3-18
3.6.6	Get it in Writing! AIA Contract Documents	3-19
3.6.7	Your Build-Out Responsibilities	3-19
3.6.8	Architect’s Build-out Responsibilities	3-20
3.6.9	Contractor’s Build-Out Responsibilities	3-21
3.6.10	Approved Suppliers.....	3-22
3.6.11	Required Fixtures, Furnishings, Equipment.....	3-22
3.6.12	Computer System	3-22
3.6.13	POS System.....	3-22
3.6.14	Sign Requirements	3-23
3.7	Initial Inventory and Supplies	3-23
3.7.1	Initial Supplies List	3-23
3.8	Utilities / Services	3-24
3.9	Uniforms.....	3-24
3.9.1	Clothing.....	3-24
3.9.2	Appearance Standards	3-26

3.10	Bank Accounts	3-27
3.10.1	Royalty Holding Account.....	3-27
3.10.2	Opening a Bank Account	3-27
3.11	Merchant Account.....	3-28
3.11.1	Underwriting	3-28
3.11.2	You need a business bank account	3-28
3.11.3	A business license is almost always required.....	3-28
3.11.4	The Application.....	3-29
3.11.5	Different types of payment acceptance	3-29
3.11.6	Supporting documents required.....	3-29
3.11.7	How long does the process take?.....	3-30
3.11.8	Processing fees and funding times may vary	3-30
3.11.9	PCI Compliance	3-30
3.12	Insurance Coverage.....	3-31
3.12.1	General Insurance Requirements.....	3-31
3.12.2	Minimum Coverage Amounts	3-31
3.12.3	Insurance Company Requirements.....	3-32
3.13	Grand Opening.....	3-32
3.13.1	Notification.....	3-32
3.13.2	Two Weeks Out – Direct Mail	3-33
3.13.3	Soft Open.....	3-33
3.13.4	Grand Open Publicity	3-34
3.13.5	VIP Invites.....	3-34
3.13.6	The First Company Meeting.....	3-34
3.14	Pre-Opening Checklist	3-35
4	HUMAN RESOURCES	4-1
4.1	Introduction	4-1
4.2	Non-Joint-Employer Status	4-2
4.3	Employment Law Basics.....	4-2
4.3.1	Employee Rights / Employer Responsibilities	4-2
4.3.2	Federal Regulations on Employment Relationships.....	4-3
4.3.3	State Employment Laws.....	4-6
4.4	OSHA	4-6
4.4.1	Federal Standards	4-6
4.4.2	State OSHA Programs.....	4-8
4.5	Preparing to Hire Your First Team Member	4-8
4.6	Job Responsibilities and Ideal Team Member Profiles	4-9
4.6.1	Responsibilities	4-9
4.6.2	Profiles of Ideal Team Members	4-10
4.6.3	Job Descriptions	4-11

4.7	Recruiting Team Members	4-11
4.7.1	Sources of Candidates	4-11
4.7.2	Job Advertisements	4-12
4.7.3	No Requirement to Advertise Open Positions.....	4-13
4.8	Job Applications	4-13
4.8.1	Application Form	4-13
4.8.2	Confidentiality of Applications	4-13
4.9	Interviewing Job Applicants.....	4-13
4.9.1	Preparing For Interviews	4-13
4.9.2	Conducting Successful Interviews	4-14
4.9.3	Questions to Avoid.....	4-15
4.10	Background Checks on Job Applicants	4-18
4.10.1	General Tips on Background Checks	4-18
4.10.2	Special Rules for Certain Records.....	4-18
4.11	Pre-Employment Testing	4-20
4.12	Miscellaneous Hiring Issues	4-21
4.13	New Employee Paperwork	4-22
4.14	Additional Steps in Hiring Process	4-24
4.15	New Team Member Orientation	4-24
4.16	New Team Member Training.....	4-25
4.17	Personnel Policies	4-26
4.17.1	Introduction	4-26
4.17.2	Communicating Work Rules	4-27
4.18	Paying Your Team Members	4-28
4.18.1	Wages	4-28
4.18.2	Minimum Wage.....	4-28
4.18.3	Tips.....	4-29
4.18.4	Overtime Pay	4-29
4.18.5	Benefits.....	4-30
4.19	Employee Scheduling	4-31
4.20	Employee Management Forms	4-31
4.21	Team Member Morale / Motivation	4-31
4.21.1	Introduction	4-31
4.21.2	Factors of Good Morale	4-31
4.21.3	Signs of Bad Morale.....	4-32
4.21.4	Improving Morale and Motivation	4-32
4.22	Performance Evaluations	4-34
4.23	Discipline	4-35

4.24	Resignation / Termination.....	4-36
4.24.1	Resignation.....	4-36
4.24.2	Termination.....	4-37
4.24.3	Post-Separation Procedures.....	4-38
4.24.4	Final Paychecks.....	4-38
4.24.5	Explaining Termination to Other Team Members.....	4-38
4.24.6	Giving References.....	4-39
4.25	Summary of Good Employee Management Practices.....	4-39
4.26	Getting Legal Help with Employment Law Issues.....	4-40
5	DAILY OPERATING PROCEDURES.....	5-1
5.1	Introduction.....	5-1
5.2	Required Days / Hours of Operation.....	5-1
5.3	Customer Service Policies and Procedures.....	5-1
5.3.1	Customer Service Philosophy.....	5-1
5.3.2	Customer Feedback.....	5-2
5.3.3	Guest Complaints.....	5-3
5.3.4	Our Customer Complaint Policy.....	5-4
5.3.5	Refund Requests.....	5-4
5.4	Miscellaneous Customer Service.....	5-5
5.4.1	Lost and Found.....	5-5
5.5	Service Procedures.....	5-5
5.5.1	Greeting Guests.....	5-5
5.5.2	Answering the Telephone.....	5-6
5.5.3	Atmosphere.....	5-7
5.5.4	Understanding the Product Offering.....	5-7
5.6	Merchandising Procedures.....	5-8
5.6.1	Visual Merchandising Standards.....	5-8
5.6.2	In-Store Advertising.....	5-8
5.6.3	Using Signage.....	5-8
5.7	Production Procedures.....	5-9
5.7.1	Recipes and Production Procedures.....	5-9
5.7.2	Sanitation Procedures.....	5-9
5.8	Hourly Cleaning Checklists.....	5-10
5.9	Opening / Closing Checklist.....	5-10
5.9.1	Opening Checklist.....	5-10
5.9.2	Closing Checklist.....	5-11
5.10	Transacting Sales.....	5-12
5.10.1	POS Procedures.....	5-12
5.10.2	Methods of Payment.....	5-12
5.10.3	Cash Handling Procedures.....	5-12
5.10.4	Accepting Personal Checks.....	5-12

5.10.5	Accepting Credit Cards	5-13
5.10.6	Suggested Prices.....	5-13
5.11	Gift Certificates – Coupons – VIP Cards - Discounts	5-13
5.11.1	Gift Certificates	5-13
5.11.2	Coupons.....	5-13
5.11.3	Employee Discounts.....	5-14
5.12	Inventory Management	5-14
5.12.1	Product Ordering Procedures / Inventory Management	5-14
5.12.2	Ordering From Approved Suppliers	5-18
5.12.3	Changing Approved Suppliers	5-18
5.12.4	Product Receiving Procedures.....	5-19
5.12.5	Storing Procedures	5-21
5.12.6	Labeling and Rotating Procedures.....	5-22
5.12.7	Spoilage.....	5-23
5.13	Operational and Financial Reporting	5-24
5.13.1	Features of the POS System	5-24
5.14	Franchise Reporting Requirements.....	5-24
5.14.1	Royalty Payment	5-24
5.14.2	Marketing Fee.....	5-24
5.14.3	Method of Payment	5-24
5.14.4	Required Reports	5-25
5.14.5	Financial Statements.....	5-25
5.15	Loss Prevention Techniques	5-25
5.15.1	Cash.....	5-25
5.15.2	Inventory	5-25
5.16	Required Cleaning and Maintenance	5-26
5.16.1	Daily Cleaning and Maintenance	5-26
5.17	Safety Procedures.....	5-28
5.17.1	Preventing Accidents and Injuries.....	5-28
5.17.2	Crisis Management Policy:	5-28
5.17.3	Reporting Accidents	5-28
5.17.4	Workers’ Compensation Issues	5-28
5.17.5	Fire Safety	5-29
5.17.6	Robbery / Burglary	5-30
5.17.7	Unruly Customers.....	5-30
5.17.8	Using the Alarm System.....	5-31
6	SALES PROCEDURES.....	6-1
6.1	Introduction	6-1
6.2	The Sales Process	6-1
6.2.1	Identifying the Guest’s Needs	6-1
6.2.2	Prospecting	6-2
6.2.3	Building Rapport with the Guest.....	6-2

6.2.4	Handling Objections.....	6-3
6.3	Understanding Your Competition	6-3
6.4	Competitive Advantages	6-4
7	MARKETING	7-1
7.1	Promoting Your Business in Your Area.....	7-1
7.1.1	Your General Obligations	7-1
7.1.2	Guidelines for Using Marks	7-1
7.1.3	Marketing Standards.....	7-2
7.2	Logo Specifications	7-3
7.2.1	Business Cards	7-3
7.3	Required Marketing Expenditures.....	7-4
7.3.1	System Marketing.....	7-4
7.3.2	Local Marketing Requirements	7-4
7.3.3	Regional Cooperative Advertising	7-4
7.3.4	Marketing Support.....	7-5
7.4	Local Marketing	7-8
7.4.1	Introduction	7-8
7.4.2	Advertising and Marketing Terms Glossary	7-8
7.4.3	Direct Mail	7-15
7.4.4	Radio	7-16
7.4.5	Television	7-17
7.4.6	Billboards	7-18
7.4.7	Magazines.....	7-18
7.4.8	Newspapers	7-19
7.4.9	Internet	7-21
7.4.10	Networking.....	7-21
7.4.11	Word of Mouth / Guest Referrals.....	7-22
7.5	Public Relations / Community Involvement	7-23
7.5.1	Press Releases.....	7-23
7.5.2	Better Business Bureau	7-24
7.5.3	Local Chamber of Commerce	7-24
7.5.4	Team Sponsorships.....	7-24
7.5.5	Community Service / Charitable Activities.....	7-24
7.6	Obtaining Marketing Approval	7-25
8	OTHER RESOURCES	8-1
8.1	Web Sites for Small Businesses	8-1
8.2	Web Sites for Organizations.....	8-1
8.3	Web Sites For Employment Laws.....	8-2
8.4	Web Site for Taxes	8-3
8.5	Recommended Books.....	8-4

9	MANAGEMENT FORMS AND DOCUMENTS	9-1
9.1	Employee Relations	9-1
9.1.1	Application Acknowledgment	9-2
9.1.2	Applicant Information Release	9-3
9.1.3	Applicant Rejection	9-4
9.1.4	Drug-Free Workplace Consent Form	9-5
9.1.5	Employee Discipline Documentation Form	9-6
9.1.6	Employee Electronic Funds Transfer Authorization	9-7
9.1.7	Employee Exit Interview Form	9-8
9.1.8	Employee Termination Meeting Checklist	9-10
9.2	Management Forms and Policies	9-12
9.2.1	Emergency Instructions	9-13
9.2.2	Employee Time Spent During Working Hours	9-14
9.2.3	General Work Rules	9-15
9.2.4	Holiday/Vacation Policy	9-16
9.2.5	Sample Collection Letter	9-19
9.2.6	Sexual Harassment Policy	9-20
9.2.7	Smoking Policy	9-21
9.2.8	Workplace Safety Rules	9-22
9.3	Procedures and Checklists	9-25
9.3.1	Checklists for Workers' Compensation Claims	9-26
9.3.2	Closing Checklist	9-30
9.3.3	Emergency Notification Checklist	9-31
9.3.4	Opening Checklist	9-32

EXHIBIT E
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT
GENERAL RELEASE (SAMPLE FORM ONLY)

GENERAL RELEASE (“Release Agreement”)

The undersigned (“**Releasor**”) and my heirs, administrators, executors, ancestors, and assigns, (collectively “**Releasor Agent(s)**”), for good and valuable consideration, the receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, hereby remise, release, and forever discharge NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC, a Texas limited liability company (“**NBF**”), with its principal business offices located at ~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~ 2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida 33137 and its Affiliates, and their respective owners, officers, directors, regional directors, managers, shareholders, members, employees, agents, successors and assigns, (collectively, the “**NBF Released Parties**”) from any and all claims, whether at law or in equity, and all contracts, controversies, claims, and demands whatsoever, at law or in equity, that Releasor and/or any Releasor Agent ever had, now have, or that any of their respective heirs, administrators, ancestors, executors, and/or assigns may have against the RBP Released Parties including, without limitation, (i) any and all claims arising out of or related to that certain Franchise Agreement between NBF and _____ dated _____, 20____, (ii) the offer and sale of the NAUTICAL BOWLS franchise opportunity, (iii) any and all claims arising under federal, state, and local laws, rules, and ordinances.

I acknowledge that this general release extends to claims which I do not know or suspect to exist in my favor at the time of executing this Release Agreement, which if were known to me may have materially affected my decision to enter into this Release Agreement. I understand that the facts in respect of which this Release Agreement is given may hereafter turn out to be other than or different from the facts in that connection known or believed to be true. I expressly assume the risk of the facts turning out to be so different and agree that this Release Agreement shall be in all respects effective and not subject to termination or rescission by any such difference in facts.

This General Release does not apply with respect to claims arising under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, RCW 19.100, and the rules adopted thereunder.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Release Agreement as of the date set forth below.

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Date: _____

[This Release Agreement will be modified as necessary for consistency with any state law regulating franchising.]

EXHIBIT F
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

LIST OF STATE ADMINISTRATORS

LIST OF STATE ADMINISTRATORS

California

Department of Financial Protection and Innovation
320 West 4th Street, Suite 750
Los Angeles, California 90013
(866) 275-2677

Hawaii

Commissioner of Securities of the State of Hawaii
Department of Commerce and Consumer Affairs
Business Registration Division
Securities Compliance Branch
335 Merchant Street, Room 203
Honolulu, Hawaii 96813
(808) 586-2722

Illinois

Office of Attorney General
500 S. Second Street
Springfield, Illinois 62701
(217) 782-4465

Indiana

Franchise Section
Securities Division
302 W. Washington St., Room E-111
Indianapolis, Indiana 46204
(317) 232-6681

Maryland

Office of Attorney General
Securities Division
200 St. Paul Place
Baltimore, Maryland 21202
(410) 576-7042

Michigan

Consumer Protection Division
Antitrust and Franchise Unit
Department of Attorney General
525 W. Ottawa St.
G. Mennen Williams Bldg., 1st Floor
Lansing, Michigan 48913
(517) 373-7117

Minnesota

Department of Commerce
85 7th Place East, Suite 280
St. Paul, Minnesota 55101
(651) 539-1627

New York

NYS Department of Law
Investor Protection Bureau
28 Liberty Street, 21st Floor
New York, New York 10005
212-416-8222

North Dakota

North Dakota Securities Department
600 East Boulevard Avenue
State Capitol – 5th 14th Floor Dept. 414
Bismarck, North Dakota 58505-0510
(701) 328-4712

Rhode Island

Securities Division
Department of Business Regulation
1511 Pontiac Avenue
John O. Pastore Complex – Building 68-2
Cranston, Rhode Island 02920
(401) 462-9527

South Dakota

Division of Insurance
Securities Regulation
124 S. Euclid Ave., Suite 104
Pierre, South Dakota 57501
(605) 773-3563

Virginia

State Corporation Commission
Division of Securities and Retail Franchising
1300 Main Street, 4th 14th Floor
Richmond, Virginia 23219
(804) 371-9051

Washington

Department of Financial Institutions
Securities Division
P.O. Box 9033
Olympia, Washington 98507
(360) 902-8760

Wisconsin

Franchise Administrator
Division of Securities
Department of Financial Institutions
345 West Washington Avenue
Madison, Wisconsin 53703

EXHIBIT G
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT
AGENTS FOR SERVICE OF PROCESS

California

Commissioner of Financial Protection and Innovation
Department of Financial Protection and Innovation
320 West 4th Street, Suite 750
Los Angeles, California 90013

Hawaii

Commissioner of Securities of the State of Hawaii
Department of Commerce and Consumer Affairs
Business Registration Division
Securities Compliance Branch
335 Merchant Street, Room 203
Honolulu, Hawaii 96813

Illinois

Office of the Attorney General
500 South Second Street
Springfield, Illinois 62701

Indiana

Indiana Secretary of State
Securities Division
302 W. Washington Street., Room E-111
Indianapolis, Indiana 46204

Maryland

Maryland Securities Commissioner
Maryland Division of Securities
200 St. Paul Place
Baltimore, Maryland 21202-2021

Michigan

Michigan Department of Attorney General
Consumer Protection Division
Attn: Franchise Section
525 West Ottawa Street
G. Mennen Williams Bldg., 1st Floor
Lansing, Michigan 48913

Minnesota

Minnesota Commissioner of Commerce
Minnesota Department of Commerce
85 7th Place East, Suite 280
St. Paul, Minnesota 55101-2198

New York

Secretary of the State of New York
One Commerce Plaza
99 Washington Avenue
Albany, New York 12231

North Dakota

North Dakota Securities Department
600 East Boulevard Avenue
State Capitol, ~~Fifth~~Fourteenth Floor Dept 414
Bismarck, North Dakota 58505

Oregon

Division of Consumer and Business Services
Finance and Corporate Securities
350 Winter Street N.E.
Labor and Industries Building, Room 21
Salem, Oregon 97310

Rhode Island

Director, Department of Business Regulation
Securities Division
1511 Pontiac Avenue, Bldg. 68-2
Cranston, Rhode Island 02920

South Dakota

Division of Insurance
Securities Regulation
124 South Euclid, Suite 104
Pierre, South Dakota 57501

Virginia

Clerk of the State Corporation Commission
1300 East Main Street, ~~4th~~14th Floor
Richmond, Virginia 23219

Washington

Director of Department of Financial Institutions
Securities Division
150 Israel Road, S.W.
Tumwater, Washington 98501

Wisconsin

Administrator, Division of Securities
Department of Financial Institutions
345 West Washington Street, 4th Floor
Madison, Wisconsin 53703

Texas

Registered Agents, Inc.
5900 Balcones Drive, Suite 100
Austin, Texas 78731

EXHIBIT H

STATE-SPECIFIC RIDERS
TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

California Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of California law, including the California Franchise Investment Law, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by any franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.
2. Section 15.1 of the Franchise Agreement is deleted from the Franchise Agreement and will have no effect in the state of California.
3. The clause, “and that you are entering into this Agreement relying solely on your own independent due diligence,” is deleted from Section 18.1.1 of the Franchise Agreement.
4. Section 18.1~~2~~ of the Franchise Agreement is deleted from the Franchise Agreement and will have no effect in the state of California.
5. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 of the Franchise Agreement are deleted.
6. The following sentence is deleted from Section 3.2 of the Franchise Agreement: “the parties acknowledge and agree that Franchisor’s permission to develop the Restaurant at a particular site is not an assurance that the Restaurant will achieve a certain sales volume or level of profitability.”
7. The following sentence is deleted from Section 3.3 of the Franchise Agreement: “The parties acknowledge and agree that Franchisor’s approval of a lease does not mean that the economic terms of the lease are favorable.”
8. The following sentence is deleted from Section 11.2.3 of the Franchise Agreement: “You acknowledge that the foregoing minimum insurance requirements do not constitute advice or a representation that such coverages are necessary or adequate to protect you from losses in connection with the franchise.”

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

Illinois Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of Illinois law, including the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act of 1987, Ill. Rev. Stat. ch. 815 para. 705/1 – 705/44 (1994), Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

_____1. The following sentence is added to the end of Section 19.1. (Choice of Law):

To the extent that this provision conflicts with Illinois law, Illinois law will control.

_____2. The following sentence is added to the end of Section 19.7. (Contractual Limitations Period):

Section 27 of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act provides that causes of action under the Act must be brought within the earlier of: 3 years of the violation, 1 year after the franchisee becomes aware of the underlying facts or circumstances, or 90 days after delivery to the franchisee of a written notice disclosing the violation.

3. The following sentence is added to the end of the Franchise Agreement:

Section 41 of the Illinois Franchise Act states that “any condition, stipulation, or provision purporting to bind any person acquiring any franchise to waive compliance with any provision of this Act or any other law of this State is void.” To the extent that any provision in the Agreement is inconsistent with Illinois law, Illinois law will control.

_____4. The following sentence is added to the end of Article 2 (Term) and Article 12 (Transfer of Interest):

Section 705/19 and 705/20 of the Illinois Franchise Act provide rights to franchisees concerning nonrenewal and termination of a franchise. If the Agreement contains a provision that is inconsistent with the Illinois Franchise Act, the Illinois Franchise Act will control.

5. Illinois law governs the Franchise Agreement.

6. In conformance with Section 4 of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act, any provision in a franchise agreement that designates jurisdiction and venue in a forum outside of the State of Illinois is void. However, a franchise agreement may provide for arbitration to take place outside of Illinois.

~~6.~~ 7. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

~~7.~~ 8. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

9. The Illinois Attorney General’s Office has required us to obtain a surety bond due to our financial condition.

~~8.~~ 10. Each provision of this Amendment shall be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of the Illinois Franchise Disclosure Act of 1987 applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment.

~~9.~~ 11. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

[Signature Page Follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

Maryland Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of Maryland law, including the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law, MD. CODE ANN., Bus. Reg. §§ 14-201 – 14-233 (2004 Repl. Vol.) (the “Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law”), Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. Based upon the franchisor’s financial condition, the Maryland Securities Commissioner has required a financial assurance. Therefore, a Surety Bond has been obtained by Franchisor to assure its financial capability; the Bond is on file with the Office of the Attorney General, Securities Division.

2. Any provision requiring Franchisee to sign a general release of any and all claims against Franchisor shall not apply to claims arising under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law.

3. Any provision requiring Franchisor to bring an action against Franchisor in any state other than Maryland shall not apply to claims arising under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law. Franchisee may bring an action in Maryland for claims arising under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law.

4. Pursuant to COMAR 02.02.08.16L, the general release required as a condition of renewal, sale, and/or assignment/transfer shall not apply to any liability under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law.

5. All representations requiring prospective franchisees to asset to a release, estoppel or waiver of liability are not intended to nor shall they act as a release, estoppel or waiver of any liability incurred under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law.

6. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the Franchise Agreement, any claims arising under the Maryland Franchise Registration and Disclosure Law must be brought within three (3) years after the grant of the franchise.

7. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

8. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 and Section 18.1 are deleted.

9. Each provision of this Amendment shall be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of Maryland law applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment.

10. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____

By: _____
Name: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

Minnesota Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of Minnesota law, including the Minnesota Franchises Act, Minn. Stat. Section 80.01 et seq. and rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____, (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. Section 7 of the Franchise Agreement is amended so that Section 7.6 is added and will state:

The franchisor will protect the franchisee’s rights to use the trademarks, service marks, trade names, logotypes or other commercial symbols (“**Marks**”) or indemnify the franchisee from any loss, costs or expenses arising out of any claim, suit or demand regarding the use of the name.

As required by the Minnesota Franchise Act, Minn. Stat. Sec. 80C.12(g), Franchisor will reimburse Franchisee for any costs that Franchisee incurs in the defense of its right to use the Marks, so long as Franchisee was using the Marks in the manner that Franchisor authorized, and so long as Franchisor is timely notified of the claim and given the right to manage the defense of the claim including the right to compromise, settle or otherwise resolve the claim, and to determine whether to appeal a final determination of the claim.

2. Minnesota Law. The following paragraphs are added to the end of the Franchise Agreement:

With respect to franchises governed by Minnesota law, Franchisor will comply with Minn. Stat. Sec. 80C.14, Subds. 3, 4 and 5 which require, except in certain specified cases, that (1) a franchisee be given 90 days’ notice of termination (with 60 days to cure) and 180 days’ notice for non-renewal of the Agreement and (2) that consent to the transfer of the franchise will not be unreasonably withheld.

To the extent that any condition, stipulation, or provision contained in the Franchise Agreement (including any choice of law provision) purports to require any person who, at the time of acquiring a franchise is a resident of Minnesota, or, in the case of a partnership or corporation, organized or incorporated under the laws of Minnesota, or purporting to bind a person acquiring any franchise to be operated in Minnesota, to waive compliance with the Minnesota Franchises Law, such condition, stipulation, or provision may be void and unenforceable under the non-waiver provision of the Minnesota Franchises Law.

Minnesota Statutes, Section 80C.21 and Minnesota Rule 2860.4400(J) prohibit the franchisor from requiring litigation to be conducted outside Minnesota, requiring waiver of a jury trial, or requiring the franchisee to consent to liquidated damages, termination penalties or judgment notes. In addition, nothing in the Franchise Disclosure Document or agreement(s) can abrogate or reduce any of franchisee’s rights as provided for in Minnesota Statutes, Chapter 80C, or franchisee’s rights to any procedure, forum, or remedies provided for by the laws of the jurisdiction.

Minnesota Rule 2860.4400(D) prohibits a franchisor from requiring a franchisee to assent to a general release.

The Limitations of Claims section must comply with Minnesota Statutes, Section 80C.17, Subd. 5.

3. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

4. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

5. Each provision of this Amendment shall be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of Minnesota Franchises Act applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment.

6. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the "Effective Date" identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

New York Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of New York Law, including the New York General Business Law, Article 33, §§ 680 – 695 (1989), Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. To the extent that the Franchise Agreement requires Franchisee to sign a release or to acknowledge facts that would negate or remove from judicial review any statement, misrepresentation or action that would violate General Business Law, Article 33, §§ 680 – 695 (1989) or a rule or order promulgated thereunder, such release or acknowledgment of fact shall be void with respect to claims arising under said law or regulation. It is the intent of this provision that non-waiver provisions of the Sections 687.4 and 687.5 of General Business Law, Article 33, §§ 680 – 695 (1989).

2. Each provision of this Amendment shall be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of New York Law applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment. This Amendment shall have no force or effect if such jurisdictional requirements are not met.

3. As to any state law described in this Amendment that declares void or unenforceable any provision contained in the Agreement, Franchisor reserves the right to challenge the enforceability of the state law.

4. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

5. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

6. Each provision of this Amendment shall be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of the New York General Business Law, Article 33, §§ 680 – 695 (1989) applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment.

7. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

North Dakota Amendment to Franchise Agreement

In recognition of the requirements of the North Dakota law, including the North Dakota Franchise Investment Law, N.D. Cent. Code, §§ 51 19 01 through 51 19 17, and the policies of the office of the State of North Dakota Securities Commission, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. The following provision is added to the end of the Franchise Agreement as new Article 20:

The parties acknowledge and agree that they have been advised that the North Dakota Securities Commissioner has determined the following agreement provisions are unfair, unjust or inequitable to North Dakota area representatives:

- A. Restrictive Covenants: Any provision which discloses the existence of covenants restricting competition contrary to Section 9-08-06, N.D.C.C., without further disclosing that such covenants will be subject to this statute.
- B. Situs of Arbitration Proceedings: Any provision requiring that the parties must agree to arbitrate disputes at a location that is remote from the site of the franchisee's business (subject, however, to the possible application of the Federal Arbitration Act, 9 US Code §§1–14).
- C. Restriction on Forum: Any provision requiring North Dakota franchisees to consent to the jurisdiction of courts outside of North Dakota.
- D. Liquidated Damages and Termination Penalties: Any provision requiring North Dakota franchisees to consent to liquidated damages or termination penalties.
- E. Applicable Laws: Any provision which specifies that any claims arising under the North Dakota franchise law will be governed by the laws of a state other than North Dakota.
- F. Waiver of Trial by Jury: Any provision requiring North Dakota franchisees to consent to the waiver of a trial by jury.
- G. Waiver of Exemplary and Punitive Damages: Any provision requiring North Dakota franchisees to consent to a waiver of exemplary and punitive damages.
- H. General Release: Any provision requiring North Dakota franchisees to execute a general release of claims as a condition of renewal or transfer of a franchise.

2. This Amendment shall be effective only to the extent, with respect to such provision, that the jurisdictional requirements of the North Dakota Franchise Investment Law, N.D. Cent. Code, §§ 51 19 01 through 51 19 17 applicable to the provisions are met independently without reference to this Amendment.

3. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

4. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

5. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

South Dakota Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of South Dakota law, including the South Dakota Franchises for brand-name goods and services law, SDCL 37-5A and rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“Franchisor”) and _____, (“Franchisee”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “Franchise Agreement”) as follows:

1. Each provision of this Amendment will be effective only to the extent that the jurisdictional requirements of South Dakota law applicable to the provisions are met independent of this Amendment. This Amendment will have no force or effect if such jurisdictional requirements are not met.

2. As to any state law described in this Amendment that declares void or unenforceable any provision contained in the Agreement, we reserve the right to challenge the enforceability of the state law.

3. This Amendment shall be effective only to the extent, with respect to such provision, that the jurisdictional requirements of the South Dakota Franchises for brand-name goods and services law, SDCL 37-5A et seq. applicable to the provisions are met independently without reference to this Amendment.

4. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

5. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

6. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
Virginia Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of Virginia law, including the Virginia Retail Franchising Act, Virginia Code, Section 13.1-564, Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“**Franchisor**”) and _____ (“**Franchisee**”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) as follows:

1. Fees. The following provision replaces Section 4.1. of the Franchise Agreement in its entirety and the Three Pack Addendum, if applicable:

Franchisee shall pay Franchisor an Initial Franchise Fee in the amount specified in the Summary Pages. The Initial Franchise Fee is due and payable when Franchisor has satisfied its pre-opening obligations owed to Franchisee and Franchisee has commenced doing business. If you have entered into a Three Pack Addendum, paragraph 2 of the Addendum is amended to provide that the ~~\$75,000~~99,500 franchise fee is due and payable when Franchisor has satisfied its pre-opening obligations owed to Franchisee and Franchisee has opened the first NAUTICAL BOWLS restaurant for business. Payment of the Initial Franchise Fee is fully earned and nonrefundable upon payment.

2. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

3. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the “Effective Date” identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC

Washington Amendment to Franchise Agreement

For purposes of complying with the requirements of Washington law, including the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, WA Rev. Code §§ 19.100.010 – 19.100.940 (1991) (the “WFIPA”), Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC (“Franchisor”), and _____ (“Franchisee”), hereby amend the Franchise Agreement between them dated _____ (the “Franchise Agreement”) as follows:

1. Section 16 of the Franchise Agreement is amended so that Section 16.2.3 is deleted in its entirety for Washington franchisees.

~~2. Attachment G to the Franchise Agreement (“Franchisee Questionnaire”) is revised to state: “This Franchisee Questionnaire does not waive any liability with respect to claims arising under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, RCW 19.100.”~~

~~3. Exhibit E of the Franchise Disclosure Document is revised to state: “This General Release does not apply with respect to claims arising under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, RCW 19.100, and the rules adopted thereunder.”~~

~~4.~~ 2. The state of Washington has a statute, RCW 19.100.180 which may supersede the franchise agreement in your relationship with Franchisor including the areas of termination and renewal of your franchise. There may also be court decisions which may supersede the franchise agreement in your relationship with Franchisor including the areas of termination and renewal of your franchise.

~~53.~~ In any arbitration involving a franchise purchased in Washington, Washington law currently requires that the arbitration site shall be either in the state of Washington, or in a place mutually agreed upon at the time of the arbitration or mediation, or as determined by the arbitrator or mediator at the time of arbitration or mediation. In addition, if litigation is not precluded by the Franchise Agreement, a franchisee may bring an action or proceeding arising out of or in connection with the sale of franchises, or a violation of the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, in Washington.

~~64.~~ In the event of a conflict of laws, the provisions of the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act, Chapter 19.100 RCW shall prevail.

~~75.~~ A release or waiver of rights executed by a franchisee shall not include rights under the Washington Franchise Investment Protection Act except when executed pursuant to a negotiated settlement after the agreement is in effect and where the parties are represented by independent counsel. Provisions such as those which unreasonably restrict or limit the statute of limitations period for claims under the Act, rights or remedies under the Act such as a right to a jury trial may not be enforceable.

~~86.~~ Transfer fees are collectable to the extent that they reflect Franchisor’s reasonable estimated or actual costs in effecting a transfer.

~~97.~~ Pursuant to RCW 49.62.020, a noncompetition covenant is void and unenforceable against an employee, including an employee of a franchisee, unless the employee’s earnings from the party seeking enforcement, when annualized, exceed \$100,000 per year (an amount that will be adjusted annually for inflation). In addition, a noncompetition covenant is void and unenforceable against an independent contractor of a franchisee under RCW 49.62.030 unless the independent contractor’s earning from the party seeking enforcement, when annualized, exceed \$250,000 per year (an amount that will be adjusted annually for inflation). As a result, any provisions contained in the Franchise Agreement or elsewhere that conflict with these limitations are void and unenforceable in Washington.

~~108.~~ RCW 49.62.060 prohibits a franchisor from restricting, restraining, or prohibiting a franchisee from (i) soliciting or hiring any employee of a franchisee of the same franchisor or (ii) soliciting or hiring any employee of the franchisor. As a result, any such provisions contained in the Franchise Agreement or elsewhere are void and unenforceable in Washington.

~~149.~~ Section 18.1.2 of the Franchise Agreement is here by revised and removed from the Franchise Agreement for the state of Washington.

~~12~~10. No statement, questionnaire, or acknowledgement signed or agreed to by a franchisee in connection with the commencement of the franchise relationship shall have the effect of (i) waiving any claims under any applicable state franchise law, including fraud in the inducement, or (ii) disclaiming reliance on any statement made by franchisor, franchise seller, or other person acting on behalf of the franchisor. This provision supersedes any other term of any document executed in connection with the franchise.

~~13~~11. Sections 16.2.2 through 16.2.5 are deleted.

~~14~~ 12. A surety bond in the amount of \$100,00 has been obtained by the Franchisor. The Washington Securities Division has made the issuance of the franchisor's permit contingent upon the Franchisor maintaining surety bond coverage acceptable to the Administrator until (a) all Washington Franchisees have (i) received all initial training that they are entitled to under the franchise agreement or offering circular, and (ii) are open for business; or (b) the Administrator issues written authorization to the contrary.

13. All other provisions of the Franchise Agreement are hereby ratified and confirmed.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed and delivered this Amendment, intending for it be effective on the "Effective Date" identified in the Franchise Agreement.

FRANCHISOR:
Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC

FRANCHISEE:

a Texas limited liability company

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

EXHIBIT I
STATE EFFECTIVE DATES

STATE EFFECTIVE DATES

The following states have franchise laws that require that the Franchise Disclosure Document be registered or filed with the state, or be exempt from registration: California, Hawaii, Illinois, Indiana, Maryland, Michigan, Minnesota, New York, North Dakota, Rhode Island, South Dakota, Virginia, Washington, and Wisconsin.

This document is effective and may be used in the following states, where the document is filed, registered or exempt from registration, as of the Effective Date stated below:

Other states may require registration, filing, or exemption of a franchise under other laws, such as those that regulate the offer and sale of business opportunities or seller-assisted marketing plans.

State	Effective Date
California	Pending
Illinois	Pending
Indiana	Pending
Maryland	Pending
Michigan	Pending
Minnesota	Pending
New York	Pending
North Dakota	Pending
Rhode Island	Pending
South Dakota	Pending
Virginia	Pending
Washington	Pending
Wisconsin	Pending

EXHIBIT J
TO NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC
FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

RECEIPTS

RECEIPTS

This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of the franchise agreement and other information in plain language. Read this disclosure document and all agreements carefully.

If Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC offers you a franchise, it must provide you this disclosure document 14 calendar days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make a payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. Michigan law requires that we give you this disclosure document at least 10 business days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. New York requires that we give you this disclosure document at the earlier of the first personal meeting or 10 business days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.

If Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC does not deliver this disclosure document on time or if it contains a false or misleading statement or a material omission, a violation of federal law and state law may have occurred and should be reported to the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and the appropriate state administrator listed in Exhibit F. Our agents for service of process are listed in Exhibit G.

Issuance Date: March 22, 20232024

The name, principal business address, and telephone number of the franchise seller offering the franchise is:

Name	Principal Business Address	Telephone Number
Max Taunton	3432 County Road 101 Minnetonka 4640 Palmer Pointe Rd Excelsior, Minnesota 55345 55331	(320) 434-5290 (612) 418-9900

I received a disclosure document dated March 22, 20232024. This disclosure document included the following Exhibits and Attachments:

- Exhibit A Financial Statements
- Exhibit B Franchise Agreement with all Attachments
- Exhibit C List of Current Franchisees and List of Former Franchisees
- Exhibit D Table of Contents of Manual
- Exhibit E General Release (sample)
- Exhibit F List of State Administrators
- Exhibit G Agents for Service of Process
- Exhibit H State Specific Riders to the Franchise Agreement
- Exhibit I State Effective Dates Page
- Exhibit J Receipts

Date of Receipt: _____

Signature

Printed Name

Individually or as an Officer of

(a _____ Corporation)
(a _____ Partnership)
(a _____ Limited Liability Company)

[Sign, date, and keep this page for your records.]

RECEIPTS

This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of the franchise agreement and other information in plain language. Read this disclosure document and all agreements carefully.

If Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC offers you a franchise, it must provide you this disclosure document 14 calendar days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make a payment to, franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. Michigan law requires that we give you this disclosure document at least 10 business days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. New York requires that we give you this disclosure document at the earlier of the first personal meeting or 10 business days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.

If Nautical Bowls Franchising, LLC does not deliver this disclosure document on time or if it contains a false or misleading statement or a material omission, a violation of federal law and state law may have occurred and should be reported to the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and the appropriate state administrator listed in Exhibit F. Our agents for service of process are listed in Exhibit G.

Issuance Date: March 22, ~~2023~~2024

The name, principal business address, and telephone number of the franchise seller offering the franchise is:

Name	Principal Business Address	Telephone Number
Max Taunton	3432 County Road 101 Minnetonka 4640 Palmer Pointe Rd Excelsior, Minnesota 55345 55331	(320) 434-5290 (612) 418-9900

I received a disclosure document dated March 22, ~~2023~~2024. This disclosure document included the following Exhibits and Attachments:

- Exhibit A Financial Statements
- Exhibit B Franchise Agreement with all Attachments
- Exhibit C List of Current Franchisees and List of Former Franchisees
- Exhibit D Table of Contents of Manual
- Exhibit E General Release (sample)
- Exhibit F List of State Administrators
- Exhibit G Agents for Service of Process
- Exhibit H State Specific Riders to the Franchise Agreement
- Exhibit I State Effective Dates Page
- Exhibit J Receipts

Date of Receipt: _____, _____

Signature

Printed Name

Individually or as an Officer of

(a _____ Corporation)
(a _____ Partnership)
(a _____ Limited Liability Company)

[Sign, date, and return to NAUTICAL BOWLS FRANCHISING, LLC,

~~3432 County Road 101, Minnetonka, Minnesota 55345~~ 2020 North Bayshore Drive, Unit 4104, Miami, Florida
33137 or mtaunton@nauticalbowls.com]